# Mastering SEQUENCE

Excel's most amazing function with more than 200 examples



# Mastering SEQUENCE

*Excel's most amazing function with more than 200 examples* 

Meni Porat



www.bpbonline.com

ii 🔳

### Copyright © 2023 BPB Online

*All rights reserved.* No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author, nor BPB Online or its dealers and distributors, will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this book.

BPB Online has endeavored to provide trademark information about all of the companies and products mentioned in this book by the appropriate use of capitals. However, BPB Online cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.

First published: 2023

Published by BPB Online WeWork 119 Marylebone Road London NW1 5PU

#### UK | UAE | INDIA | SINGAPORE

ISBN 978-93-55518-545

www.bpbonline.com

# Dedicated to My beloved daughters Noga & Gili Who have patiently borne with me In the last year

iii

# About the Author

**Meni Porat** has been working in the software industry for more than 20 years. He has played central roles in numerous projects as a systems analyst and project manager. He worked for various financial institutions: banks, credit card companies and insurance companies. Currently, he is a self-employed consultant and Excel & VBA instructor. The author is also very active on social media channels, especially Facebook and LinkedIn. On the latter, he has published during the last year more than 150 posts and articles which have been read by more than 400,000 people. During that period he also featured in four YouTube international webinars on Excel. As a tribute to his contributions to the international Excel community, the author has been awarded with the Most Valuable Professional (MVP) by Microsoft.

# About the Reviewer

**Cristiano Galvao** is a Microsoft MVP from Brazil with over 2 decades of working experience with Microsoft Excel. He has been a guest speaker on the major Excel conferences abroad, and is the organizer of the Excel Weekend, the most important Excel conference in South America. Cristiano is the technical reviewer of many Excel books translated to Portuguese, including authors such as Bill Jelen, John Walkenbach, Paul McFedries, Ron Person, Joseph Schmuller, and more.

# Acknowledgement

I would like to express my gratitude to my daughters for their support and understanding while their father was seized in a fit of writing momentum, leaving them only a small amount of patience and leisure.

I am extremely grateful to my dear friend, Dr. Isaac Gottlieb. Without his unwavering support and invaluable advice, this book would not have been written.

I wish to express my obligation to BPB Publications for their unstinted aid. I am indebted to the publisher who saw the potential in the book's subject, took the risk and made this book come true. The long enterprise has reached its successful goal.

Finally, a special thanks to many of my Linkedin friends who read my numerous posts and responded enthusiastically. Their feedback greatly motivated me.

# Preface

Excel is a ubiquitous sophisticated software. With the introduction of the new Dynamic Array Functions (DAF) in Excel 365, using Excel has become much simpler and extremely fast.

This book presents the crème de la crème of these new functions: SEQUENCE. This function is explained thoroughly in more than 200 examples accompanied by almost 300 pictures.

The book is designed to provide the most comprehensive guide to that function. You will be able to find examples of how to implement SEQUNECE (usually with collaboration with other functions) in almost any field imaginable: from text and numbers to finance and mathematics.

The vast number of practical examples is intended to guide the reader on how to implement this function cleverly in building solutions to challenges in Excel.

Throughout the book, the reader will encounter well-designed answers to problems in various levels of complexity. It is not necessary to the read the book's chapters sequentially. Just pick randomly the chapters that interest you or those that are most relevant to your problems.

With this book, you will gain the knowledge and skills to become a proficient and efficient problem solver in Excel. We do believe that you will find this book informative, useful, and inspiring.

**Chapter 1: A Short Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365** – Explains the new features in Excel 365. This is nothing short of a revolution in Excel: instead of a formula that returns a single-cell result, we now have an array of results in multiple cells. This introductory chapter illustrates the use of these functions in 30 examples. Some of the DAF were published only a few months ago.

**Chapter 2: SEQUENCE in Text Operations** – Every analyst (data/business/ financial...) needs some very common text manipulation in order to clean his/her data and prepare it for analysis. This chapter supplies more than 60 examples of how to do it.

**Chapter 3: Using SEQUENCE with Numbers** – Easy-to-apply methods for creating a sequence of numbers (ascending or descending, positive or negative), duplicating a number (or a sequence of numbers), extracting numbers from a mixed string, etc. are showcased in this chapter.

**Chapter 4: SEQUENCE in Arrays** – As the name implies, Dynamic Array Functions are meant to deal with arrays of data, both in input and output. This chapter will show you several ways to build dynamic arrays, flip them vertically and horizontally, transpose arrays, fetch multiple results for a search value and more.

**Chapter 5: SEQUENCE in Date and Time Operations -** Dates and times calculations are very common in Excel. The SEQUENCE function will show you neat tricks to generate sequence of dates, create various dynamic monthly and yearly calendars, generate automatic schedules, produce lists of dates (for example: last day of each month of the year), calculate net workdays in a given period (with/without holidays) and many more.

**Chapter 6: Financial Operations with SEQUENCE** – This chapter will be of great interest for readers whose expertise is in finance: accountants, economists, financial analysts, CFOs etc. The chapter supplies a new approach to old solutions for financial functions: PMT, DB, NPV, PDURATION, RATE, IRR etc.

**Chapter 7: SEQUENCE - The Ancilla of Math** – Whether you are a mathematics teacher or not, here, you will find some fresh ideas of how to harness new approaches (sometimes with dynamic Excel charts to better illustrate the concept) to mathematical challenges in algebra, trigonometry and the number theory.

**Chapter 8: SEQUENCE and Other Animals** – Last but not least, this chapter is dedicated to some more complex examples. It demonstrates the powerful symbiosis and cooperation of SEQUENCE and other advanced functions. Several examples with the new versatile LAMBDA function are also given.

# **Coloured Images**

Please follow the link to download the *Coloured Images* of the book:

# https://rebrand.ly/21ud2u7

We have code bundles from our rich catalogue of books and videos available at **https://github.com/bpbpublications**. Check them out!

## Errata

We take immense pride in our work at BPB Publications and follow best practices to ensure the accuracy of our content to provide with an indulging reading experience to our subscribers. Our readers are our mirrors, and we use their inputs to reflect and improve upon human errors, if any, that may have occurred during the publishing processes involved. To let us maintain the quality and help us reach out to any readers who might be having difficulties due to any unforeseen errors, please write to us at :

## errata@bpbonline.com

Your support, suggestions and feedbacks are highly appreciated by the BPB Publications' Family.

Did you know that BPB offers eBook versions of every book published, with PDF and ePub files available? You can upgrade to the eBook version at www.bpbonline.com and as a print book customer, you are entitled to a discount on the eBook copy. Get in touch with us at :

business@bpbonline.com for more details.

At **www.bpbonline.com**, you can also read a collection of free technical articles, sign up for a range of free newsletters, and receive exclusive discounts and offers on BPB books and eBooks.

# Piracy

If you come across any illegal copies of our works in any form on the internet, we would be grateful if you would provide us with the location address or website name. Please contact us at **business@bpbonline.com** with a link to the material.

## If you are interested in becoming an author

If there is a topic that you have expertise in, and you are interested in either writing or contributing to a book, please visit **www.bpbonline.com**. We have worked with thousands of developers and tech professionals, just like you, to help them share their insights with the global tech community. You can make a general application, apply for a specific hot topic that we are recruiting an author for, or submit your own idea.

## Reviews

Please leave a review. Once you have read and used this book, why not leave a review on the site that you purchased it from? Potential readers can then see and use your unbiased opinion to make purchase decisions. We at BPB can understand what you think about our products, and our authors can see your feedback on their book. Thank you!

For more information about BPB, please visit **www.bpbonline.com**.

# Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

https://discord.bpbonline.com



# **Table of Contents**

1. A Short Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 3651
Introduction1
Structure1
Objectives
Introducing Dynamic Array functions
Examples of the new DAF
UNIQUE function
FILTER function4
SORT function5
SORTBY function
RANDARRAY function
SEQUENCE function7
TEXTSPLIT function7
TOCOL function8
TOROW function9
VSTACK function9
VSTACK versus TOCOL
HSTACK function10
EXPAND function11
ARRAYTOTEXT function11
TEXTBEFORE function12
TEXTAFTER function12
CHOOSECOLS function
CHOOSEROWS function14
WRAPROWS function14
WRAPCOLS function15
XLOOKUP function15
XMATCH function

	TAKE function	. 17
	DROP function	. 18
	VALUETOTEXT function	. 18
	Conclusion	. 19
	Points to Remember	. 19
_		
2.	SEQUENCE in Text Operations	.21
	Introduction	. 21
	Structure	.21
	Objectives	. 24
	Examples of SEQUENCE with text	. 24
	Finding the names of the 10 highest-paid employees	. 24
	How many words are there in the cell (version 1)	. 25
	How many words are there in the cell (version 2)	. 25
	How many times does a string appear in the cell	
	Method 1 of 5	. 26
	Method 2 of 5	. 26
	Method 3 of 5	. 27
	Method 4 of 5	. 27
	<i>Method 5 of 5</i>	. 28
	Extract all characters - Horizontally	. 28
	Extract all characters – Vertically	. 29
	All uppercase English in one column	. 29
	All uppercase English in one cell	. 30
	Duplicate a sequence of characters	. 30
	Duplicate a cell by a duplication factor	. 31
	Method 1	. 31
	Method 2	. 32
	Creating English uppercase letters without knowing	
	how many letters there are	. 32
	Transpose without TRANSPOSE	. 33
	Extract only first three letter of weekday names	. 33
	Extract only digits from a string	. 34

Method 1 of 3
Method 2 of 3
Method 3 of 3
Extract only unique Alphabetic characters from a string
Split numbers and text
Remove unwanted characters from string (2 named ranges as parameters)36
Remove unwanted characters from string (Formula)
How many times does a string appear in a range
Is it a Palindrome?
Add vendor to list (the table)
Add vendor to list (the formula)
Remove all digits from the string
Move first name from end of cell to the beginning
Reverse String
Method 1 40
Method 2
Sort Text in alphabetical order
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT). 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT). 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 1
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT). 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 144Method 244
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT). 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 1
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT) . 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 144Method 244All Greek letters in one formula45Find last word in cell41
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT). 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 144Method 244All Greek letters in one formula45Find last word in cell45
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT) . 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 144Method 244All Greek letters in one formula45Find last word in cell45Method 2 of 346
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT) . 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 144Method 244All Greek letters in one formula45Find last word in cell45Method 2 of 346Method 3 of 346
Sort Text in alphabetical order41How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE). 42How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT) . 42Off with their heads43Extract only digits and add a separator43How many lower-case letters are there in the cell44Method 144Method 244All Greek letters in one formula45Find last word in cell45Method 1 of 345Method 2 of 346Number of characters in cell (without the separator)47
Sort Text in alphabetical order

	Method 1 of 2	
	Method 2 of 2	
	Increasing Text from end to start	
	Increasing Text from start to end	
	Hebrew Gematria (Formula)	
	Hebrew Gematria (Gtable – Translation table)	
	Extract only Country Names	
	How many occurrences of a String starting from a certain position	
	Remove Diacritics from Hebrew words	
	Is it a Palindrome (Arabic)	
	Convert Hebrew letters into English letters	
	Fetch description of Nth item of a non-sorted Key	
	Extract letters only from a chosen language (Formula)	
	Extract letters only from a chosen language (Validation list)	
	Gematria in English	
	Method 1	56
	Method 2	56
	How many Words are there in a Range?	
	Extract only non-digits from String	
	Find Unicode value for any character in the string,	58
	Conclusion	
	Points to remember	
3. U	Jsing SEQUENCE with Numbers	61
	Introduction	61
	Structure	61
	Objectives	
	Examples of SEQUENCE with numbers	
	Five methods to generate 12 positive integers	
	Method 1	63
	Method 2	64

Method 3	. 64
Method 4	. 65
Method 5	. 65
Five methods to generate 12 negative integers	. 66
Method 1	. 66
Method 2	. 66
Method 3	. 67
Method 4	. 68
Method 5	. 68
Descending SEQUENCE – Two methods	. 68
Method 1	. 69
Method 2	. 69
Duplicate cell horizontally	. 70
Duplicate cell vertically	. 70
Duplicate numbers	. 71
Creating a vertical SEQUENCE of numbers – Two methods	. 71
Find missing numbers in a list	. 73
Reverse a Number	. 73
Reverse a horizontal ascending array	. 74
Reverse a horizontal descending array	. 74
SEQUENCE of odd and even numbers	. 75
Sum all digits in a cell which has only digits	. 76
Sum all digits in a cell which has digits and text	. 76
Sum every Nth row	. 77
Sum the largest N numbers	. 77
Sum the smallest N numbers	. 78
Two tricks with SEQUENCE (ROW())	. 78
Create a SEQUENCE of n Rows starting from Row(n)	. 78
SUM a virtual array created by SEQUENCE (ROW())	. 79
SUM SEQUENCE (virtual array)	. 79
<i>Alternate 1s and 0s</i>	. 80

Dynamic SEQUENCE 81
Two methods to extract a number from the string's end
Method 181
Method 2
Two methods to extract a number from the string's start
Method 1
Method 2
Find N largest numbers (Ascending)
Find N largest numbers (Descending)
How many columns in a sheet85
How many digits85
Reverse numbers horizontally by a parameter
Reverse order of a SEQUENCE of numbers
Subject with the highest score
SEQUENCE based on number of unique values
Dynamic frequency based on dynamic bins
SEQUENCE column
SEQUENCE and COLUMNS
Building a chessboard in three steps91
Chessboard - Step 1
Chessboard - Step 2
Chessboard - Step 3
Creating N-digit number with the same digit repeated N times
Conclusion
Points to remember
4. SEQUENCE in Arrays
Introduction
Structure
Objectives
Examples of SEQUENCE with arrays96

Creating an array of identical numbers - Two methods	
Creating an array of ascending numbers – three methods	
From one cell to a vertical array	
How many active months	
Build a dynamic array - horizontal or vertical	
Flip columns horizontally	
Method 1	
Method 2	
Flip vertical array (with and without SEQUENCE)	
Flip part of vertical array using a parameter	
Create a two-dimensional array using four parameters	
Flexible LARGE	
MMULT with static ranges and with dynamic Arrays	
Four useful tricks with VLOOKUP	
VLOOKUP - Fetch all columns of an item searched	
VLOOKUP - Fetch all data per lookup key in reverse order	
VLOOKUP - Fetch last two columns for a search key	
VLOOKUP - Fetch the first and third data items per lookup key	
From vertical to horizontal – Two Methods	
Method 1	
Method 2	
Four two-dimensional arrays generated by two parameters	
Select columns by parameters	110
Transpose a vertical array without knowing its size beforehand	110
Fetching multiple results for a search value	
Vertical to horizontal without TRANSPOSE	
Conclusion	112
Points to remember	112
5. SEQUENCE in Date and Time Operations	113
Introduction	113
Structure	113

Ol	ojectives	15
Ех	amples of SEQUENCE with date and time11	15
	12 months with each month's first day11	5
	The year's months with the last day of each month - three methods 11	6
	Display the last date of each month of the year – method 1	16
	Display the last date of each month of the year – method 2	16
	Display the last date of each month of the year – method 3	17
	N consecutive dates starting from today (two methods)11	8
	Method 111	18
	Method 211	19
	<i>Display month names without a specific date</i>	9
	<i>Two methods to display the weekday names</i> 12	20
	Adding minutes to time	21
	Adding seconds to time	21
	Sequence of days in a given month12	22
	A SEQUENCE of dates (between start and end dates)	22
	Extract only time –four traditional methods	23
	Extract only time – a new method12	24
	Presence in class by month	25
	How many Mondays are there in a given month12	25
	How many Saturdays between two dates?12	26
	Method 1	26
	Method 2	27
	Display only dates of Wednesdays in 202012	28
	How many Wednesdays are there in 2020?	28
	Sequence of the month's last date for each month (two methods)	<u>29</u>
	Method 1	<u>29</u>
	Method 2	30
	A horizontal SEQUENCE of descending dates - First of each month	30
	A substitute for NETWORKDAYS.INTL (for a certain month)	31
	The MonCal Named Range	32
		-

A substitute for the NETWORKDAYS.INTL (any period)133
A substitute for NETWORKDAYS.INTL - with/without weekends133
The Definition of MonCal134
How many working days are there in each month of a given period?134
How many eligibility days?
The doctor's schedule (two versions)136
The doctor's schedule (version 1)136
The doctor's schedule (version 2)137
Monthly calendar – classic versus non-classic
Monthly calendar - classic
Monthly calendar – non-classic
Monthly calendar in 20 languages
Monthly calendar in 20 languages – list of languages and formats
Monthly calendar in 20 languages – list of month numbers
Two methods for creating a list of the month's days142
Monthly calendar – a bad attitude142
Monthly calendar – a good attitude142
Yearly calendar – good versus bad143
Dynamic yearly calendar – in one formula144
Dynamic yearly calendar – Conditional Formatting
Dynamic yearly calendar - by month145
Dynamic yearly calendar - by week145
Yearly Horizontal calendar with highlighted weekday (two examples)146
Yearly horizontal calendar147
Example 1 (weekday chosen: Sunday)147
Example 2 (weekday chosen: Saturday)147
Yearly horizontal calendar - Conditional Formatting - calendar
Yearly horizontal calendar - Conditional Formatting - weekday names
Yearly vertical calendar with highlighted weekday (2 examples)149
Yearly vertical calendar – example 1150
Yearly vertical calendar – example 2150

Yearly vertical calendar – Conditional Formatting - calendar	151
Yearly vertical calendar – Conditional Formatting – weekday names	151
Yearly calendar: one formula with Conditional Formatting	152
Conditional Formatting – each weekday is formatted differently	153
Conclusion	154
Points to remember	154
6. Financial Operations with SEQUENCE	155
Introduction	155
Structure	155
Objectives	156
Examples of SEQUENCE with financial functions	156
Loan return by payments per period	156
PMT - Periodic payment of a loan – traditional method	157
Periodic payment of a loan – a more flexible method	160
The Depreciation function in Excel – DB	162
Equally divide a sum of money over a period of time	163
One formula - How varying loan amounts impact the loan's installments	3163
NPV – No need for a data table	167
PDURATION - Multiple results	168
The RATE function – multiple results	170
RRI - calculate the average annual interest rate of an investment	171
SEQUENCE and SUM	173
Conclusion	174
Points to remember	175
7. SEQUENCE - The Ancilla of Math	177
Introduction	177
Structure	177
Objectives	178
Examples of SEQUENCE in math operations	178
A number to the power of	179

<i>Two methods to create a sequence of square roots</i>	
Two methods to generate a sequence of fractions	
Creating a sequence of alternate 1's and 0's	
Dynamic quadratic equation	
SUM - a virtual Array	
How many candles	
Raising the number 2 to the power of 10 using bit operation	
Simplest OR	
Dynamic Sine with two Spin buttons	
Exponential Growth example	
Dynamic multiplication table	
BIN2DEC – MMULT and SEQUENCE	
BIN2DEC - SUM (or SUMPRODUCT) with SEQUENCE	
Filling the missing values in a geometric series	
Trigonometry with SEQUENCE	
An array of duplicate numbers generated by bit operations	
Using MMULT and SEQUENCE to track wins, losses, and ties in each quarter	
Digital root	
First n odd numbers squared (A simple solution)	
First N odd numbers squared (A complex solution)	
Find first divisor of a number (divisor found)	
Find first divisor of a number (divisor not found)	
Conclusion	
Points to remember	
8. SEQUENCE and Other Animals	
Introduction	
Structure	
Objectives	
Examples of SEQUENCE with other animals	
Better than nested IF	

Traditional solution – nested IF
XLOOKUP and SEQUENCE instead of nested IF (example 1)
XLOOKUP and SEQUENCE instead of nested IF (example 2)
XLOOKUP and SEQUENCE instead of nested IF (example 3)
Fetch the first and last digits from a string
Data validation – only Hebrew letters
Data validation – only uppercase English letters
Splitting cell by chunk size and separator (two examples)
Remove all digits from string208
Remove names and split numbers to separate cells
Removing "A", "B" and "C" from string – two methods
Method 1
Method 2
INDEX-SQRT instead of FILTER211
Remove all uppercase or lowercase letters from string
Verifying the validity of a check digit with the Luhn algorithm
Conclusion
Points to remember
Index

# CHAPTER 1 A Short Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365

# Introduction

The latest version of Excel (Excel 365) is nothing short of a revolution. The new formula engine of Excel allows you to reference an array in one formula and get multiple results. This was not the case until a few years ago. However, the most revolutionary aspect of this new version is that Microsoft has added some new functions, which operate on arrays and enhance their flexibility and ease of use.

This chapter will briefly introduce some of these powerful functions and demonstrate their utility and efficiency.

This introduction demonstrates only a small fraction of these functions' power. Also, only in few cases will we exemplify the combination of two or more of these functions. Such co-operation of two or more DAF can have endless applications for problems in Excel that could not have been solved earlier with formulae.

# Structure

This chapter will discuss the functions in the bulleted list below. Each function will be briefly explained and elucidated in a picture/pictures which will show the function in action.

In this chapter, we will discuss the following topics:

- Introducing Dynamic Array Functions
- Examples of the new DAF
  - UNIQUE returns a list of unique values in a range.
  - FILTER selects data according to condition/s.
  - SORT sorts a range, ascending/descending.
  - SORTBY sorts a range by another range/array.
  - o RANDARRAY generates a bounded array of random numbers.
  - SEQUENCE generates a sequence of numbers/characters.
  - o TEXTSPLIT splits text across columns/rows by a specified delimiter.
  - o TOCOL converts a horizontal/bi-dimensional array to a vertical one.
  - TOROW converts a vertical/bi-dimensional array to a horizontal one.
  - VSTACK stacks one or more arrays vertically, upon the other.
  - HSTACK stacks one or more arrays horizontally, one after the other.
  - EXPAND expands/pads an array by specified dimensions.
  - ARRAYTOTEXT converts an array/range to a single-cell text string.
  - TEXTBEFORE returns the text before a delimiter/substring.
  - TEXTAFTER returns the text after a delimiter/substring.
  - CHOOSECOLS returns data by specified column number/s.
  - CHOOSEROWS returns data by specified row number/s.
  - WRAPROWS wraps a row/column after a specified number.
  - WRAPCOLS wraps a row/column after a specified number.
  - XLOOKUP searches a range/array and returns first found item.
  - XMATCH searches an item in a range/array and returns its position.
  - TAKE returns part of an array according to rows/columns specified.
  - DROP drops rows and/or columns from an array.
  - VALUETOTEXT converts non-text to text, text left intact or wrapped in quotes.

# Objectives

After reading this chapter, you will be able to understand the difference between single-cell and multiple-cell functions in Excel. You will also realize the quantum leap of the new **Dynamic Array Functions** (**DAF**). This chapter will make it easier for you to comprehend the versatility and flexibility of the new generation functions, and implement these functions in your daily work.

# **Introducing Dynamic Array functions**

This chapter exemplifies all the **Dynamic Array Functions** (**DAF**) introduced by Microsoft until the date of writing this chapter (December 2022). Some of these functions might be available only in the Beta version, which gives you the advantage of getting acquainted with them in advance.

These functions are very versatile and powerful. They can accomplish many new features that were not available in previous versions of Excel.

However, this chapter does not include the new **LET** and **LAMBDA** functions. Nor does it contain the LAMBDA **helper** functions that do not operate alone and serve as ancillary functions to LAMBDA. For example: **MAP**, **MAKEARRAY**, **DROP**, **SCAN**, **REDUCE**, **BYCOL**, and **BYROW**.

Although these non-DAF functions are not presented in the current chapter, some of them will be demonstrated in the next chapters, where we will expose the **SEQUENCE** Function in action.

The DAF list, however, is up to date and includes all the *independent* functions published till the date of writing this chapter.

# **Examples of the new DAF**

We will now discuss the examples of the new DAF functions in detail:

# **UNIQUE** function

The **UNIQUE** function extracts unique values from a list/array as illustrated in the following figure:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	Ν	0	Р	Q	R
2	aaa		aaa							Argun	ients to	Functi	o <b>n:</b>					
3	bbb		bbb							1. Arra	ay - arr	ay to re	turn un	ique va	lues fro	m		
4	aaa									2. By (	Col - un	ique ro	ws (0) d	or uniq	ue colui	nns (o	mitted)	
5	aaa									3. Exa	ctly on	ce - occ	ur exac	tly onc	e or dis	tinct (o	mitted)	
6	bbb			=UNIQ	UE(A2:	:A4)												
7																		
8																		
9																		
10																		
11		The l	UNIQ	UE Fu	nction	extra	cts un	ique v	alues	from	a list/a	irray						
12																		
13																		
14																		
15																		
16																		

Figure 1.1: The UNIQUE function: A simple Example

# **FILTER function**

The **FILTER** function retrieves from an array only records that match a condition/ conditions as illustrated in the following figure:



Figure 1.2: The FILTER function - filter only those who registered in January

# **SORT** function

The **SORT** function sorts an array according to parameters. If the parameters are omitted (as in our example), the sort is being executed with the default parameters. In our example, the sort is in ascending order (the default):

1	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Η	I	J	K	L	М	N	0	Р	Q	R
1	Before		After						Argum	ents to	Functi	on:						
2	1		1						1. Arra	iy - arra	iy to so	rt						
3	11		2						2. Sort	Index -	- which	colum	n to sor	t (omitt	ed)			
4	21		11						3. Sort	Order	- defau	lt: asce	nding -	defaul	t (omitt	ed)		
5	2		21		=SOR	RT(A2:A	.7)		4. By (	Col so	rt by r	ow -def	ault - o	r by col	umn (o	mitted)		
6	22		22															
7	31		31															
8																		
9																		
10																		
11																		
12																		
13			A simple	ascer	ıding	sort ex	ample	e										
14																		
15																		
16																		

Figure 1.3: The SORT function (example 1): ascending SORT

In the following example, we are sorting in descending order (the third parameter is -1):

1	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	К	L	М	N	0	Р	Q	R
1	Before		After															
2	1		31						Argun	ents to	Functi	on:						
3	11		22						1. Arra	iy - arra	ay to se	ort						
4	21		21						2. Sort	Index	- which	colum	n to sor	rt (omitt	ed)			
5	2		11		=SOR	T(A2:A	7,,-1)		3. Sort	Order	- desce	nding (	-1)					
6	22		2						4. By (	Col sa	ort by r	ow -def	ault - o	r by col	umn (o	mitted)		
7	31		1															
8																		
9																		
10																		
11																		
12																		
13			A simple	desce	ending	g sort e	examp	le										
14																		
15																		
16																		

Figure 1.4: The SORT function (example 2): descending SORT

# **SORTBY** function

The **SORTBY** function sorts by an array. In our example, the months of the dates array (B2:B8):

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J K L M N O P
1		Before			After					Arguments to Function:
2		25/09/2022			18/01/2022					1. Array - array to sort
3		16/08/2022			02/02/2022					2. By Array - which Array to sort by
4		04/10/2022			13/05/2022					
5		18/01/2022			16/08/2022		$\mathbf{i}$			
6		13/05/2022			25/09/2022					
7		12/12/2022			04/10/2022			$\mathbf{i}$		
8		02/02/2022			12/12/2022					
9										
10							=SOR	TBY(I	B2:B8	,MONTH(B2:B8))
11										
12										
13		Sort an ar	ray of	f date:	s by month	ı –				
14										
15										
16										

Figure 1.5: The SORTBY function: SORT dates by month

# **RANDARRAY** function

The **RANDARRAY** function generates a random array. In our example, it creates ten random integer numbers between 1 and 100:



Figure 1.6: The RANDARRAY function: generate random numbers

# **SEQUENCE** function

We will learn the **SEQUENCE** function inside out, so here is a simple example of creating a sequence of 12 descending numbers:



Figure 1.7: The SEQUENCE function: create a sequence of numbers

# **TEXTSPLIT** function

The **TEXTSPLIT** function splits a cell's value by a delimiter.

In the following example, we use an array constant (in curly braces) to define more than one delimiter.

Please note, that although this function is considered a DAF it can operate properly only on single cells:



Figure 1.8: The TEXTSPLIT function: Split a cell's text into several cells

# **TOCOL** function

## Example 1:

A simple example of the **TOCOL** function in which we transpose the original array from horizontal to vertical:



Figure 1.9: TOCOL: A very simple Example

## Example 2:

In this example, we use a "trick": the inner IF statement returns an invalid value ("NA"), and since TOCOL's second argument = 2 tells Excel to ignore errors, the resulting array (Col.E) displays matching rows only:

	А	В	C D	E	F	G	Н	1	J	К	L
1	List 1	List 2		<b>Matching Rows only</b>							
2	689	689		689							
3	14776	333		4448							
4	1678901	9999		57779	$\mathbf{X}$						
5	4448	4448		399999							
6	57779	57779									
7	123454	11111				$\mathbf{N}$					
8	399999	399999									
9	24598	13									
10	135782	14									
11	134										
12			=TC	OCOL(IF(B2:B10=A2	2:A11	,B2:B10,	NA),2	.,1)			
13											
14											
15											
16											
17			Dis	play only matching	rows	in both	lists				
18											
19											
20											

Figure 1.10: TOCOL: A more "sophisticated" Example

# **TOROW** function

A simple example of the **TOROW** function in which we transpose the original array from vertical to horizontal is illustrated in the following figure:



Figure 1.11: TOROW: A very simple example

# **VSTACK** function

In the following example, we *stack* two arrays one on top of the other to create one vertical array:



*Figure 1.12*: *VSTACK: A very simple example* 

# VSTACK versus TOCOL

The following image demonstrates the differences between **TOCOL** (on the left-hand side) and **VSTACK** (on the right-hand side).

**TOCOL** creates the stack horizontally, from left to right. However, **VSTACK** *stacks* the first column on top of the second one:



Figure 1.13: The differences between TOCOL and VSTACK

# **HSTACK** function

The **HSTACK** function *stacks* horizontally, as can be seen in the following figure. We *slice* two rows and combine them to one long array, arranged horizontally:

	А	в	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	N	0	Р	Q	R	S
1		Original	l Array				Argun	ients to	Functi	on:									
2	1	8	15	22			1. Arra	ay1, Ar	ray2,	- one of	more :	arrays s	stacked	horizo	ntally of	ne aftei	• the otl	ier	
3	2	9	16	23															
4	3	10	17	24															
5	4	11	18	25															
6	5	12	19	26															
7	6	13	20	27															
8	7	14	21	28															
9						1	8	15	5 22	2 2	9	16	23						
10							<u> </u>												
11																			
12																			
13						=HST/	ACK(A2	:D2,A3	:D3)										
14																			
15																			
17																			
18			A simr	ole exa	mple	of HS	ГАСК												
19																			
20																			

Figure 1.14: HSTACK: a very simple example

# **EXPAND** function

This example utilizes the new Data Types feature of Excel 365 (Data\*Data Types\*Geography):

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	М	Ν	0	Р
1	Country Name	Capital		Country Name		Argun	ents to	Functi	on:							
2	🏝 Afghanistan	🖨 Kabul	- 1	🏚 Afghanistan		1. Arra	ıy - Arı	ay to e	xpand							
3	🕼 Albania	🎒 Tirana	1	🏚 Albania		2. Row	s - how	many	rows to	expan	l (defa	ult: all)	(omitte	d)		
4	🕼 Algeria	Algiers		🛱 Algeria		3. Colu	umns - l	iow ma	ny colu	imns to	expan	d (defau	lt: all)	(omitte	d)	
5	🖨 American Samoa	🛱 Pago Pago	1	🏚 American Samoa		4. Pad	with - I	how to	pad em	ipty elei	nents (	default	: #NA)	(omitte	d)	
6	Andorra	🖨 Andorra la Vella	1	Andorra												
7	🛱 Angola	🛱 Luanda	1	∄h Angola												
8	🕼 Anguilla	🏠 The Valley		Anguilla												
9	🕼 Antigua and Barbuda	🕼 Saint Johns		🏠 Antigua and Barbuda												
10	🛱 Argentina	🕼 Buenos Aires		🛱 Argentina												
11	🕼 Armenia	🕼 Yerevan		Armenia												
12	🛱 Aruba	🛱 Oranjestad		🛱 Aruba												
13	🛱 Australia	🕼 Canberra		🏚 Australia												
14																
15																
16		=EXPAND(A1:A	13,,)													
17																
18																
19	Expand examp	le: rows and co	olum	ins are omitted,	so	the wh	ole rai	ıge								
20	(first argument	t) is selected														
21																

Figure 1.15: EXPAND example

# **ARRAYTOTEXT** function

Some examples of the **ARRAYTOTEXT** function, from top to bottom: converting an array of numbers to text in a single cell (two examples), converting an array of characters to a single cell (two examples) and showing the similarities between this function and the **TEXTJOIN** Function.

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Η	I	J	K	L	м	N
1	Array of Numbers								Arguments	to Function	ı:			
2	i	1							1. Array - a	array to disp	olay as text			
3		2	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	<	=ARRAYT	OTEXT(A2:A6.	0)		2. Format -	output for	nat. "0"- co	ncise, "1"-	strict (Defau	dt: 0)
4		3	{1:2:3:4:5}	<	=ARRAYT	OTEXT(A2:A6.	1)							
5	4	4	(-,-,-,,-,)			,								
6		5												
7														
8	Array of Text													
9	a													
10	b		a, b, c, d, e	<	=ARRAYT	OTEXT(A9:A13	(0,							
11	с		{"a";"b";"c";"d";"e"}	<	=ARRAYT	OTEXT(A9:A13	,1)							
12	d													
13	e													
14		T	he ARRAYTOTEX	TF	unction (defa	ult format) will	vield							
15		si	milar results to TE	хтј	OIN (as can l	be seen below):								
16														
17			1, 2, 3, 4, 5	<	=TEXTJOI	N(", ",,A2:A6)								
18			a, b, c, d, e	<	=TEXTJOI	N(", ",,A9:A13)								
19														
20														
21	Some Example	s of	f the ARRAYT	DTI	EXT Funct	tion								
22														

*Figure 1.16*: *ARRAYTOTEXT example* 

# **TEXTBEFORE** function

The **TEXTBEFORE** function can extract text from an array / range preceding a delimiter:

	A E	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	N	0	Р	Q
1	City & State	City only			Argum	ents to	Functio	n:								
2	New York, NY	New York			1. Text	t - text	to searc	h for th	e delim	iter						
3	Los Angeles, CA	Los Angeles			2. Deli	miter -	the cha	racter/s	used a	s the d	elimiter					
4	Chicago, IL	Chicago			3. Insta	ance nu	m - inst	ance of	delimit	ter in to	ext (Def	fault: 1)	)			
5	Houston, TX	Houston			4. Mat	ch mod	e - is de	limiter	case-se	nsitive	(0-No,1	<mark>l-yes) (</mark> l	Default:	: 1)		
6	Phoenix, AZ	Phoenix			5. Mat	ch end	- match	delimi	ter agai	nst end	l-of-tex	t (0-No	,1-yes) (	Defaul	t: 0)	
7	Philadelphia, PA	Philadelphia		$\mathbf{N}$												
8	San Antonio, TX	San Antonio		$\mathbf{N}$												
9	San Diego, CA	San Diego		=TEX	<b>FBEFOI</b>	RE(A2:A	<b>\17,'',''</b> )									
10	Dallas, TX	Dallas														
11	San Jose, CA	San Jose														
12	Austin, TX	Austin														
13	Jacksonville, FL	Jacksonville														
14	Fort Worth, TX	Fort Worth														
15	Columbus, OH	Columbus														
16	Indianapolis, IN	Indianapolis														
17	Charlotte, NC	Charlotte														
18																
19																
20		An example	of TE2	CTBEI	FORE											
21		Extract text	before	the de	limiter	(comr	na)									
22																

*Figure 1.17*: TEXTBEFORE example

# **TEXTAFTER function**

Here, two examples are being demonstrated.

#### Example 1:

The first is a simple one, where the instance number = -1, which means: finding the last occurrence of the delimiter and fetching the text immediately following it. This is illustrated in the following figure:

	А	в	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	N	0	Р
1	Before		After		Argu	ments t	o Funct	ion:								
2	J.S. Bach Leipzig Germany		Germany		1. Te	xt - text	to sear	ch for	the del	imiter						
3	W.A. Mozart Vienna Austria	1	Austria		2. De	limiter	- the ch	aracte	r/s use	d as the	delim	iter				
4					3. Ins	stance n	um - in	stance	of deli	miter in	text (	Defaul	: 1) (-1	l=last)		
5		/			4. M:	atch mo	de - is d	lelimit	er case	-sensitiv	/e (0-N	lo,1-ye	) (Def	ault: 1)		
6					5. Ma	atch end	l - mate	h delir	niter a	gainst ei	nd-of-t	ext (0-	No,1-y	es) (Defa	ault: 0)	
7																
8	=TEXTAFTER(A2:A3," ",-1)															
9																
10																
11																
12																
13																
15																
16		TEXT	<b>FAFTER example:</b>													
17		The f	ormula fetches the s	ubs	tring	after th	e last d	elimit	er (bla	nk)						
18																
19																

*Figure 1.18*: TEXTAFTER – a simple example
#### Example 2:

The second example illustrates a very interesting feature of this function:

Even though the delimiter is defined as a single blank character (""), the function returns the text after more than one blank.

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	Ν
1	improvement of 30%		10000											
2														
3		3000												
4														
5														
6			=C1*TI	EXTAF	TER(TF	RIM(A1)	," ",2)							
7														
8														
9														
10		3000												
11														
12														
13			=C1*TI	EXTAF	TER(A1	," ",2)								
14														
15														
16		An ama	zing fe	ature	of the	TEXT	AFTE	R Fun	ction:					
17		One do	es not i	ieed to	) TRIN	<b>A</b> the t	ext in (	order (	to get t	the cor	rect ai	ıswer.		
18		TEXTA	FTER	hand	les the	second	l delin	iiter as	s if it w	vere a s	single	blank		

Figure 1.19: TEXTAFTER – An amazing feature

# **CHOOSECOLS** function

The **CHOOSECOLS** function allows us to select only certain columns of a multi-column array.

Please note that:

- The second argument can be written either as a list of numbers, that is, 1,2 or as an array constant: {1,2}
- Specifying -1 as the second argument will fetch the last column only:

	А	В	С		D	Е	F	G	Н		I	J	K	L	м	N	C	)
1	Country	Capital	<b>Country C</b>	ode					Argu	men	ts to	Funct	ion:					
2	Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG			Afghanistan	Kabul		1. Ar	ray -	Arr	ay to i	etrieve	desired	data fi	rom		
3	Albania	Tirana	ALB		1	Albania	Tirana		2. Co	l.Nu	m1,	Col.N	um2	number	of col	umn/s t	o retrie	eve
4	Algeria	Algiers	DZA		1	Algeria	Algiers											
	American		ASM															
5	Samoa	Pago Pago	ASIM			American Sam	Pago Pago											
6	Andorra	Andorra la Vella	AND			Andorra	Andorra la Vella											
7	Angola	Luanda	AGO			Angola	Luanda											
8	Anguilla	The Valley	AIA			Anguilla	The Valley											
	Antigua and			7		Antigua and												
9	Barbuda	St. John's	ATG			Barbuda	St. John's											
10	Argentina	Buenos Aires	ARG			Argentina	Buenos Aires											
11	Armenia	Yerevan	ARM			Armenia	Yerevan											
12	Aruba	Oranjestad	ABW			Aruba	Oranjestad											
13	Australia	Canberra	AUS			Australia	Canberra											
14	Austria	Vienna	AUT			Austria	Vienna											
15	Azerbaijan	Baku	AZE			Azerbaijan	Baku											
16																		
17			=CHOOSE	COL	L <mark>S(</mark> A	.2:C15,1,2)												
18																		
19		<b>CHOOSECO</b>	DLS - Reti	irn f	first	2 columns	of the array											
20	Please note:	<b>=CHOOSEC</b>	OLS(A2:	C15,	,{1,2	2}) - Will yie	eld the same re	esult										

Figure 1.20: CHOOSECOLS example

### **CHOOSEROWS** function

The CHOOSECOLS function allows us to select only certain rows of a multi-row array.

Please note that:

- The second argument can be written either as a list of numbers, that is, 1,6 or as an array constant: {1,6}
- Specifying -1 as the second argument will fetch the last row only:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Η	Ι	J	K	L	М	Ν	0	Р	Q
1	Country	Capital	<b>Country Code</b>						Argum	ents to	Functio	n:					
2	Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG		Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG		1. Arra	y - Arra	ay to ret	rieve de	sired da	ta from			
3	Albania	Tirana	ALB	1	Angola	Luanda	AGO	1	2. Row	.Num1,	Row.Nu	m2 n	umber	of row/s	s to retri	eve	
4	Algeria	Algiers	DZA														
5	American Samoa	Pago Pago	ASM														
6	Andorra	Andorra la Vella	AND														
7	Angola	Luanda	AGO														
8	Anguilla	The Valley	AIA	/													
9	Antigua and Barbuda	St. John's	ATG	/													
10	Argentina	Buenos Aires	ARG	/													
11	Armenia	Yerevan	ARM														
12	Aruba	Oranjestad	ABW														
13	Australia	Canberra	AUS														
14	Austria	Vienna	AUT														
15	Azerbaijan	Baku	AZE														
16																	
17			=CHOOSER	OWS(A	2:C15,1,6)												
18																	
19																	
20		CHOOSEF	ROWS - Retu	rn 1st a	nd 6th rov	vs of the	array										
21																	
22																	
23																	

Figure 1.21: CHOOSEROWS example

# **WRAPROWS** function

The **WRAPROWS** function *wraps* a vertical array by rows. In the following example, we *wrap* two consecutive rows of the original (one-dimensional) array into a two-column array:

	А	в	С	D	E	F	G	H I J K L M N O	Р
1	Premiers			Р	remiers			Arguments to Function:	
2	USA			USA	Joe Biden			1. Vector - vector to be wrapped	
3	Joe Biden			Germany	Olaf Scholz			2. Wrap count - number of cells to wrap	
4	Germany		· /	UK	Rishi Sunak			3. Pad with - character/s to pad with (default: none)	
5	Olaf Scholz			Russia	Vladimir Putin				
6	UK			China	Xi Jinping				
7	Rishi Sunak								
8	Russia								
9	Vladimir Putin		/						
10	China		=WRAI	PROWS(A2:A	A11,2)				
11	Xi Jinping								
12									
13									
15									
16			WRAI	PROWS Ex	ample				
17			Each t	wo consecu	tive rows will l	oe "wra	pped"		
18			into a	single row i	in 2 consecutiv	e colum	ns		
19									

Figure 1.22: WRAPROWS example

## **WRAPCOLS** function

In the **WRAPCOLS** function example, each two consecutive rows of the original (onedimensional) array are being *wrapped* into a two-row array as illustrated in the following figure:

	А	в	С	D	E	F	G	Н	I J K L M N O P
1	Premiers			Co	untries & Pro	emiers			Arguments to Function:
2	USA		USA	Germany	UK	Russia	China		1. Vector - vector to be wrapped
3	Joe Biden		Joe Biden	Olaf Scholz	Rishi Sunak	Vladimir Putin	Xi Jinping		2. Wrap count - number of rows in each column
4	Germany								3. Pad with - character/s to pad with (default: none)
5	Olaf Scholz								
6	UK								
7	Rishi Sunak								
8	Russia								
9	Vladimir Putin		=WRAPC	OLS(A2:A1	1,2)				
10	China								
11	Xi Jinping								
12									
13									
14									
16			WRAPCO	LS Exampl	e				
17			Fach two	consocutivo	e rowe will bo	"wrannod"			
17			into a singl	lo column	iows will be	wrapped			
18			into a sing	e condititi					
20									

Figure 1.23: WRAPCOLS example

# **XLOOKUP** function

The **XLOOKUP** function is the more advanced and flexible version of the good old **VLOOKUP** function.

#### Example 1:

In our example, Argument no. 5 is -1 means: Exact match. If the Lookup Value is not found, the next smaller item is returned.

	А	в	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	H I J K L M N O P Q R S
1	From	То	bonus		Agent No.	No. of Subscriptions	Total Commission		Arguments to Function:
2	1	100	2		1	651	9114		1. Lookup value - value to search
3	101	200	4		2	526	6312		2. Lookup array - array to search (The "From" column)
4	201	300	6		3	566	6792		3. Return array - array with answer (The "bonus" column)
5	301	400	8		4	594	7128		4. If not found - if value searched was not found (default: none)
6	401	500	10		5	362	2656		5. Match mode1 = Exact match. If not found, return next smaller item
7	501	600	12		6	761	12176		6. Search mode - (omitted)
8	601	700	14		7	585	7020		
9	701	800	16		8	533	6396		
10	801	900	18		9	842	15156		
11	901	1000	20		10	353	2824		
12									
13									
14		=XLOO	JKUP(F2	:F11	,A2:A11,C2	:C11,,-1)*F2:F11			
15	Fach or	tont roc	oives a b		e donondir	a on her number of	enheaviptions		
10	Each ag	gent rec	erves a t	0 L	s uepenun	g on net number of	subscriptions.		
17	ror exa	mpie, <i>F</i>	Agent INO	.о п	as between	SOT and SOU SUBSC	riptions.		
18	She will	receiv	e: \$12 pe	er ea	ch subscri	ption. So if she has	555 subscriptions,		
19	her tota	l comn	iission w	ill b	e: 12*533	= \$6396			
20									
21				XL	OOKUP -	exact match			
22									

Figure 1.24: XLOOKUP example 1 – exact match returns the next smaller value

#### Example 2:

Another example with **XLOOKUP**. Here, Argument no.5 is 2 which means: wildcard match as shown in the following figure:

	A	В	С	D	Е	F	G	H	[	I	J	K	L	Μ	Ν	0
1	List of Directors & Movies		List of Directors		Result - Director & Movie		Argumen	ts to F	uncti	on:						
2	John Cassavetes - Rosemary's Baby		Akira Kurosawa		Akira Kurosawa - Dodes Kaden		1. Lookuj	o value	e - val	lue to seai	ch					
3	Michaelangelo Antonioni - BlowUp		Wim Wenders		Wim Wenders - Paris, Texas		2. Lookuj	) array	/ - ari	ay to sear	ch					
4	Wim Wenders - Paris, Texas		Jean-Luc Godard		Jean-Luc Godard - Breathless		3. Return	array	- arra	ay that ho	lds the ans	wer				
5	Akira Kurosawa - Dodes Kaden		John Cassavetes		John Cassavetes - Rosemary's Baby		4. If not f	ound -	if val	lue search	ed was not	found (defa	ault: none)			
6	Jean-Luc Godard - Breathless		Michaelangelo Antonioni	1	Michaelangelo Antonioni - BlowUp		5. Match	mode	- how	to match	(default: (	)= exact), h	ere we use:	2 = wildca	rd match	
7			/				6. Search	mode	- hov	v to searcl	h (default:	1 = search f	from first v:	due)		
8																
9																
10																
11	=XLOOKUP("*"&C2&	"*	",\$A\$2:\$A\$6,\$A\$2	2:\$	A\$6," ",2)											
12																
13																
14																
15																
16																
17																
18																
19			XLOOKUP - wild	lca	rd match											
20			We are searching	a s	ubstring within the full tex	ct										
21																
22																
23																

Figure 1.25: XLOOKUP example 2 – wildcard match

#### Example 3:

Third example of XLOOKUP. Here Argument no.5 is 2 which means: exact match. If not found, as in our case, the next larger item is returned as shown in the following figure:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	H I J K L M N O P	
1	Train Sch	edule			My Arrival	10:17		Arguments to Function:	
2	Platform No.	Arrival						1. Lookup value - value to search	
3	1	10:05						2. Lookup array - array to search	
4	2	10:15						3. Return array - array that holds the answer	
5	3	10:37			3			4. If not found - if value searched was not found (default: none)	
6	4	10:51			1			5. Match mode - 1 = Exact match. If not found, return next larger item	
7	5	11:12			/			6. Search mode - how to search (default: first to last) (omitted)	
8	6	11:33			/				
9	7	11:56		=XLO	OKUP(F1,B3	:B12,A3	3:A12,"",1		
10	8	12:01							
11	9	12:09							
12	10	12:12							
13				<b>XLOC</b>	)KUP - Whi	ch train	platform	should I go to	
14				if I arı	rive at the tra	in stati	on at 10:1	17	
15									
16				Exac	t Match				
17									

Figure 1.26: XLOOKUP example 3 – exact match returns the next larger item

### **XMATCH** function

**XMATCH** is a more advanced version of the veteran **MATCH** function. When searching for an exact match, (as in our example) the looked-up column does not need to be sorted (as in **MATCH**). See the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	N	0				
1	Country	GNI Per Capita - in USD		Threshold	15000		Argumen	ts to Functi	ion:										
2	United States	64,610					1. Lookuj	yalue - va	lue to sear	rch									
3	China	17,090					2. Lookuj	) array - ari	ray to sear	rch									
4	Japan	43,130					3. Match	mode - how	to match	1 = exa	ct match. If n	ot found,	get next va	lue					
5	Germany	56,320					4. Search	mode - hov	v to searcl	h (defaul	t: 1 = search	from first	value)						
6	United Kingdom	45,870																	
7	France	47,720																	
8	India	6,440																	
9	Italy	42,340																	
10	South Korea	45,620		China															
11	Canada	46,090																	
12	Russia	29,110																	
13	Brazil	14,550																	
14	Australia	52,240																	
15	Spain	37,990		=INDEX(A	A2:A17,	XMAT	CH(E1,I	B2:B17,1	l,1))										
16	Mexico	17,810																	
17	Indonesia	11,750																	
18																			
19																			
20	INDEX & XMATC	H - Find the first country v	vhose (	GNI >= thre	shold														
21																			
22																			
23																			
24																			

Figure 1.27: XMATCH combined with INDEX: find 1st country whose GNI>=15,000

# **TAKE** function

The **TAKE** function *carves* a sub-array from the original array. Here, the result is a 3\*3 array:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	м	Ν	0	Р	Q	R	S
1									Argum	ents to ]	Function	n:							
2		1	2	3	4	5			1. Arra	ıy - arra	y from v	which to	) take re	ows and	l/or colu	mns			
3		6	7	8	9	10			2. Row	s - how	many ro	ws to ta	ike						
4		11	12	13	14	15			3. Colu	ımns - h	ow man	y colum	ins to ta	ke					
5																			
6																			
7						-	-												
8					1	2	3												
9				$-\Lambda$	6	7	8												
10					11	12	13												
11																			
12					1.2.22														
13			=TAK	E(B2:F	4,3,3)														
14																			
15																			
10			TAIZI		nlas and	want o	2*2			ma Ala a	outains	Janua							
17			IAK	exam	pie: ext	ract a	<u>5"5 SI</u>	ze ar	ray iro	m the	origina	u arra	y	_					
18																			
20																			
21																			
22																			

Figure 1.28: TAKE example: create a two-dimensional "sub-array"

# **DROP** function

The **DROP** function omits rows and/or columns from an array to create a smaller array.

The second argument is negative, which tells Excel to drop rows from the array's end:

	Α	В	С	D	E	F	G	Η	Ι	J	K	L	Μ	Ν	0
1	Country	Capital	<b>Country Code</b>		Country	Capital	Country Code		Argume	ents to I	Functior	1:			
2	Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG	1	Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG		1. Arra	y - arra	y to retr	ieve desi	red dat	ta from	
3	Albania	Tirana	ALB		Albania	Tirana	ALB		2. Rows	- no. o	f rows to	o omit (n	egative	=from b	ottom)
4	Algeria	Algiers	DZA		Algeria	Algiers	DZA		3. Colu	mns - n	o. of col	umns to	drop (d	lefault: r	none)
5	American Samoa	Pago Pago	ASM		American Samoa	Pago Pago	ASM								
6	Andorra	Andorra la Vella	AND		Andorra	Andorra la Vella	AND								
7	Angola	Luanda	AGO	/	Angola	Luanda	AGO								
8	Anguilla	The Valley	AIA	/	Anguilla	The Valley	AIA								
9	Antigua and Barbuda	St. John's	ATG		Antigua and Barbuda	St. John's	ATG								
10	Argentina	Buenos Aires	ARG		Argentina	Buenos Aires	ARG								
11	Armenia	Yerevan	ARM												
12	Aruba	Oranjestad	ABW												
13	Australia	Canberra	AUS												
14	Austria	Vienna	AUT												
15	Azerbaijan	Baku	AZE												
16															
17		=DROP(A1:	C15,-5,)												
18		<u>`````````````````````````````````````</u>		1											
19															
20		DROP - Re	move rows a	nd/or	columns from a	rav									
21		and In	101010		i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i										
21		T	1 11	11.71	1										
22		in this exar	npie we "dro	p" the	e last 5 rows of t	ne original ai	rray								
23															

Figure 1.29: DROP example

# **VALUETOTEXT** function

The **VALUETOTEXT** function converts non-text to text. Since the second argument is omitted, the text is unaltered (that is, not put in quotes):

	А	В	C D	E	F	G	Н		I	J		K		L	М	Ν	0
1	Name	Registration Date					Functi	ion's	s Argu	ments:							
2	Yossi	01/01/2020		Yossi	43831		1. Valu	ue -	range	to be co	nverte	d to text	t				
3	Eli	01/02/2020	1	Eli	43862		2. For	mat	- "0"	- text ur	altere	d, "1" -	text p	out in	quotes		
4	David	01/03/2020		David	43891												
5	Anat	01/04/2020		Anat	43922												
6	Yafa	01/05/2020		Yafa	43952												
7	Herzl	01/06/2020		Herzl	43983												
8	Avivit	01/07/2020		Avivit	44013												
9																	
10			/														
11		=VALUETOTEXT(A	A2:B8)														
12																	
13																	
14																	
15																	
17		VALUETOTEXT	- converts n	on_text	to text												
17			- converts n	UI-text	to text,												
18		text is entire unafte	red of wra	pped in	quotes												
20																	

*Figure 1.30*: *VALUETOTEXT example* 

# Conclusion

In this chapter, we became acquainted with a new type of functions in Excel. No more functions that operate on a single cell or yield a result in a single cell. These functions are the Dynamic Array Functions which operate on an array or produce an array, either from a single cell or from an array. Some of these new functions can operate simultaneously on rows as well as on columns.

The next chapter, *SEQUENCE* and *TEXT* operations is going to delve into the intricate features of SEQUENCE in abundant cases and examples, which show its amazing potence and suppleness when slicing and dicing text.

# **Points to Remember**

- The above DAF can be organized into the following categories: Transpose: **TOROW**, **TOCOL**
- Compact and rearrange: HSTACK, VSTACK, CHOOSEROWS, CHOOSECOLS, WRAPROWS, WRAPCOLS, TAKE, EXPAND, DROP, UNIQUE, SORT, SORTBY
- Search and Select: XLOOKUP, XMATCH, FILTER
- Slice and cleave: **TEXTSPLIT**, **TEXTBEFORE**, **TEXTAFTER**
- Manipulate data: VALUETOTEXT, ARRAYTOTEXT
- Randomize data: RANDARRAY
- Create series: **SEQUENCE**
- Please be advised that these categories are given only for the sake of simplicity. As you practice them, you will surely find new ways to implement and apply them, often in concert with other DAF to enhance the power and robustness of your formulae and achieve neat results which were not possible in the past.

#### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

#### https://discord.bpbonline.com



# CHAPTER 2 SEQUENCE in Text Operations

# Introduction

This chapter will thoroughly discuss how useful the SEQUENCE function is in text operations. After *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365,* the introductory chapter, we are going to dive in this chapter and the next ones to understand the various areas of Excel in which **SEQUENCE** can be helpful, useful, and efficient.

This chapter, as the title hints, will exemplify the use of **SEQUENCE** with other Excel functions to execute solutions to variegated tasks. Some examples are going to use the new functions discussed in the previous chapter (and also the **LET** function, which was only mentioned).

# Structure

The chapter covers the following topics:

- Examples of SEQUENCE with text
  - Finding the names of the 10 highest-paid employees
  - How many words are there in the cell (version 1)
  - How many words are there in the cell (version 2)

- How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 1 of 5)
- How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 2 of 5)
- How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 3 of 5)
- How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 4 of 5)
- How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 5 of 5)
- Extract all characters Horizontally
- Extract all characters Vertically
- All uppercase English in one column
- o All uppercase English in one cell
- Duplicate a sequence of characters
- Duplicate a cell by a duplication factor (method1)
- Duplicate a cell by a duplication factor (method2)
- Creating English uppercase letters without knowing how many letters there are
- Transpose without TRANSPOSE
- o Extract only first three letter of weekday names
- Extract only digits from a string (method 1 of 3)
- Extract only digits from a string (method 2 of 3)
- Extract only digits from a string (method 3 of 3)
- Extract only unique Alphabetic characters from a string
- o Split numbers and Text
- Remove unwanted Characters from string (2 named ranges as parameters)
- Remove unwanted characters from string (Formula)
- How many times does a string appear in a range
- Is it a Palindrome?
- Add vendor to list (the table)
- Add vendor to list (the formula)
- Remove all digits from the string
- o Move first name from end of cell to the beginning
- Reverse String (Method 1)

- Reverse String (Method 2)
- From Vertical to Horizontal
- How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE)
- How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT)
- o "Off with their heads"
- Extract only digits and add a separator
- How many lower-case letters are there in the cell (Method 1)
- How many lower-case letters are there in the cell (Method 2)
- o All Greek letters in one formula
- Find last word in cell (Method 1 of 3)
- Find last word in cell (Method 2 of 3)
- Find last word in cell (Method 3 of 3)
- Number of characters in cell (without the separator)
- Number of non-empty cells in a column
- Strip leading and trailing digits (Method 1 of 2)
- Strip leading and trailing digits (Method 2 of 2)
- o Increasing Text from End to Start
- o Increasing Text from Start to End
- o Hebrew Gematria (Formula)
- Hebrew Gematria (Gtable Translation table)
- Extract only Country Names
- How many occurrences of a String starting from a certain Position
- Remove Diacritics from Hebrew words
- Is it a Palindrome (Arabic)
- Convert Hebrew Letters into English Letters
- Fetch description of Nth item of a non-sorted Key
- o Extract Letters only from a chosen Language (Formula)
- Extract Letters only from a chosen Language (Validation List)
- Gematria in English (Method 1)

- Gematria in English (Method 2)
- How many active months?
- VLOOKUP&SEQUENCE fetch more than one column
- Find Unicode value for any character in the string, no matter which language

# Objectives

The objective of this chapter is to familiarize the reader with the variety of features, challenges, and flexibility by which the **SEQUENCE** function can be implemented when dealing with textual challenges in Excel.

# **Examples of SEQUENCE with text**

In this section, we will look at various examples of SEQUENCE with text:

# Finding the names of the 10 highest-paid employees

This formula displays the 10 highest-paid employees in the list. The parameter in cell H1 enables us to choose any number we desire, be it smaller or larger than 10 as shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.1: Names of the top 10 highest-paid employees

### How many words are there in the cell (version 1)

This is the first solution version for this challenge:

The words are separated by a delimiter (in our example, a space ("")). In such a case, the formula trims excessive spaces between words, giving us the correct result as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.2: How many words are there in the cell (version 1)

# How many words are there in the cell (version 2)

A shorter alternative to the previous example, using the more advanced function: **TEXTSPLIT** as shown in the following screenshot (released lately and is explained in *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*):



Figure 2.3: How many words are there in the cell (version 2)

# How many times does a string appear in the cell Method 1 of 5

Method 1 (of 5): We want to know how many times the string defined in D2 (parameter) appears in cell A2. If we want a case-sensitive search, we should change **SEARCH** to **FIND** as shown in the following screenshot:

of SEARCH

Figure 2.4: How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 1)

#### Method 2 of 5

Method 2 (of 5): using **SUM**:



Figure 2.5: How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 2)

#### Method 3 of 5

Method 3 (of 5): using **EXACT**:



Figure 2.6: How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 3)

#### Method 4 of 5

Method 4 (of 5): The N function converts **FALSE / TRUE** to **0/1**:



Figure 2.7: How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 4)

#### Method 5 of 5

Method 5 (of 5): Using **UNIQUE**:



Figure 2.8: How many times does a string appear in the cell (method 5)

#### **Extract all characters - Horizontally**

Split each character of the original string into a separate cell (horizontally):



Figure 2.9: Extract all characters – Horizontally

### **Extract all characters – Vertically**

Split each character of the original string into a separate cell (vertically) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.10: Extract all characters – Vertically

# All uppercase English in one column

Generating the whole English alphabet (Uppercase Letters) with one simple formula in a range is shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.11: All uppercase English Letters in one Column

### All uppercase English in one cell

Generating the whole English alphabet (Uppercase letters) with one simple formula in one cell can be seen in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.12: All uppercase English letters in one cell

#### **Duplicate a sequence of characters**

The following technique is very useful when you want to duplicate a sequence of characters. You need to supply three parameters:

- which characters to start with (cell: G2)
- the total number of characters in the array (in cell: I2)
- by what factor to duplicate each letter (how many times should each character appear) (in cell: M2):



Figure 2.13: Duplicate a sequence of characters

# Duplicate a cell by a duplication factor Method 1

The duplication factor (in cell: I2) specifies how many times the string in cell A2 should be duplicated.

Method 1 of 2 is illustrated in the following figure:



Figure 2.14: Duplicate a cell by a duplication factor (method1)

#### Method 2

The duplication factor (in cell: I2) specifies how many times the string in cell A2 should be duplicated.

Method 2 of 2 is illustrated in the following figure:



Figure 2.15: Duplicate a cell by a duplication factor (method2)

# **Creating English uppercase letters without knowing how many letters there are**

The trick here is to find the number of letters by subtracting the ASCII value of the first letter ("A") from that of the last letter ("Z") as shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.16: Creating the English uppercase letters without knowing the number of the Alphabet letters

### **Transpose without TRANSPOSE**

Converting a vertical list into a horizontal list without using the **TRANSPOSE** function can be done as seen in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	М	N	0
1			January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December	
2	January														
3	February														
4	March														
5	April														
6	May														
7	June														
8	July														
9	August			=INDEX(	A2:A13,SI	EQUEN	CE(,12),	1)							
10	September														
11	October														
12	November														
13	December														
14															
15															
16				Transpos	e without	TRAN	SPOSE	:							
17				Converti	ng the ver	tical lis	t into a	horizor	ital arra	у					
18															
19															

Figure 2.17: Transpose without TRANSPOSE

### Extract only first three letter of weekday names

Two methods to extract only the first three letters of the weekday names – with and without **SEQUENCE**:



Figure 2.18: Extract first three letters of the weekday names (with & without SEQUENCE)

# Extract only digits from a string Method 1 of 3

This is the first of three methods which demonstrate how to extract only digits from a cell.

An additional method will be demonstrated in *Chapter 8, SEQUENCE and other animals.* 



*Figure 2.19: Extracting only digits from a string (method 1 of 3)* 

#### Method 2 of 3

Extracting only digits from a cell (Method 2) is shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е
2	Joh\$%^n1222C/ +?ecilia1224M\:aria12344				
3					
4					
5		1222122412344			
6					
7					
8					
9	=TEXTJOIN(,1,IFERROR(MID(A2,	SEQUENCE(LEN(	(A2)),1)*1	.,""))	
10					
11					
12					
13	Extract only Digits - method 2				
14					
15					
16					

Figure 2.20: Extracting only digits from a string (method 2 of 3)

#### Method 3 of 3

Extracting only digits from a cell (Method 3) is shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.21: Extracting only digits from a string (method 3 of 3)

# Extract only unique Alphabetic characters from a string

Extracting only one occurrence of each letter in cell B4 is shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.22: Extract only unique alphabetic characters from a string

#### Split numbers and text

The two formulae combine two new functions (**TEXTBEFORE** and **TEXTAFTER**, explained in *Chapter 1*, *Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*) with **SEQUENCE** in order to separate international country codes from the country names as is shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.23: Split numbers from text

# Remove unwanted characters from string (2 named ranges as parameters)

In order to remove unwanted characters, the parameters shown here are the Switches (indicating which subset should be kept, for example: digits, lowercase letters, uppercase letters, and so on) and the ASCII values associated with these switches. These parameters make the solution flexible, as we can always choose which characters to remove (that is, non-printable characters) and which to keep. The following figure displays the parameters (switches and values) defined in the Name manager. These parameters will be used in the formula shown in the next section (see *Figure 2.25*).

Name Mana	ger			?	×
<u>N</u> ew	<u>E</u> dit <u>D</u> elete			Eilt	er▼
Name	Value	Refers To	Scope	Com	ment
Switche	(""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""	= 'Filter Out unwanted characters' SD\$3: \$D\$11	Filter Out unwanted characters		
Ualues	("1","48","58","65","91","97","123","224","251")	= Filter Out unwanted characters ISCS3:SCS11	Filter Out unwanted characters		
<					>
Refers to:					
×	Filter Out unwanted characters'!\$D\$3:\$D\$11				Ť
				Clo	ose

Figure 2.24: Remove unwanted characters (the Parameters pane)

# Remove unwanted characters from string (Formula)

In this example, we want to keep in each cell of the Before range (A27:A33) only: digits, upper case English characters and lower-case English characters.

The results in the After range (B27:B33) show the *clean* data as can be seen in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.25: Remove unwanted characters (the Formula)

# How many times does a string appear in a range

We want to find out the number of times the string defined as a parameter (cell: I1) appears in the searched range (Cell A2:A5) as shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.26: How many times does a string appear in a range

#### Is it a Palindrome?

A palindrome is a word, phrase or sentence that can be read exactly the same from beginning to end as well as from end to beginning. This example demonstrates the famous saying attributed to Napoleon Bonaparte, after returning from exile in the island of Elba: *Able was I ere I saw Elba* as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	Μ	Ν
1														
2	able was I ere I saw elba													
3														
4			у											
5														
6														
7	=IF(\$A\$2=CONCAT(MID(	\$A\$2,S	EQUE	NCE(L	EN(\$A	\$2),1,L	EN(\$A	<b>\$2),-1)</b> ,	1)),"y"	,"n")				
8														
9														
10														
11		A Pal	indron	ne is a	word,	a phra	se or a	a sente	nce, w	hich				
12		can b	e read	the sai	ne for	ward o	r bacl	cward.						
13		SEQU	JENCI	E helps	us de	cide wl	hether	the str	ring in	A2				
14		is a pa	alindro	me.										
15														
16														
17														
18														
19														
20														

Figure 2.27: Is it a Palindrome?

# Add vendor to list (the table)

If you add a new name into the **Desc.** Column (column A), and that name appears on the vendors table (defined in this figure as TVEN, column D), then by moving to the **Vendor** column (column B), that name is automatically added to the list of valid vendors in column B as shown in the following screenshot:

File Tab TV	e Home Insert Draw Page Layo Ie Name En Eli Summarize with PrvotTab En Resize Table Properties Tools	ut Formulas Data le Insert Export Refr Slicer	Review Vie Properti esh Copen in S Unlink ternal Table Data	w Developer Help Power Pivo es Header Row   first C Browser   Total Row   Last C W Banded Rows   Bande Table Sty	t Table Design Jolumn Y Filter Button Jolumn ed Columns le Options						
2	🖞 Undo 👻 🖓 Redo 👻 🎸 Clear All 🕀 Draw Border Grid 🗄 Thick Outside Borders 🖓 Speak Cells 🅘 Remove										
D5	$\sim$ : $\times \checkmark f_x$ An	nazon									
	А	В	С	D	Е						
1	Desc.	Vendor		Vendors List 🖉							
2	aaa-Google ccc	Google		Google							
3	a- Microsoft3333	Microsoft	1	Paypal							
4	1Ford a33			Microsoft							
5	222Paypalss	Paypal		Amazon							
6	x1343Amazon	Amazon		Intel							
7				Xerox							
8				Philips							
9			l l								

Figure 2.28: Add vendor to list (dynamic table)

#### Add vendor to list (the formula)

If you add a new name into the **Desc.** Column (column A), and that name appears on the vendors table (defined in the previous figure as TVEN column D), then by moving to the **Vendor** column (column B), that name is automatically added to the list of valid vendors in column B as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	
1	Desc.	Vendor		Vendors List 🖉								
2	aaa-Google ccc	Google		Google								
3	a- Microsoft3333	Microsoft	1	Paypal								
4	1Ford a33		1	Microsoft								
5	222Paypalss	Paypal		Amazon								
6	x1343Amazon	Amazon		Intel								
7				Xerox								
8				Philips								
9												
10												
11												
12	=IFFRROR(LOO	KUP(SUM	TEASN	MARER/FIND	TVon	A2)) SEQUENCE(COUNTA(TVen)))) S	FOUE	NCE(C)		(TVen)	TVen) "	
14	II LIMON(LOO	Ref (Sem			r ven,		LQUL.	ic L(C	<u>oenn</u>	(I ven)	<i>,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,</i>	,
15												
16	If a vendor nam	e found in	colum	1 A appears in	the V	endors List (Table Tven on column ]	D),					
17	then add the ven	dor's nam	e in col	umn B								
18												
19												
20												

Figure 2.29: Add vendor to list (the formula)

# Remove all digits from the string

How to remove only the digits from a cell leaving all other characters intact can be seen illustrated in the following figure:



Figure 2.30: Remove all the digits from the string (cell A2)

# Move first name from end of cell to the beginning

What happens if we receive a file of names where the first name appears at the end, and we want to move it to the beginning?

Here is a solution:



Figure 2.31: Move first name from the end to the beginning

# **Reverse String** Method 1

Reverse a string (method 1 of 2) – Using **TEXTJOIN** with **SEQUENCE**:

	А	В	С	D
1	Before		After	
2	Jenny I've got your number		rebmun ruoy tog ev'I ynneJ	
3		1		
4		_/		
5				
6		/		
7		<u>/</u>		
8	=TEXTJOIN("",,MID(A2,SE	QUE	ENCE(LEN(A2),1,LEN(A2),-1),1))	
9				
10				
12				
13				
14				
15	<b>Reverse String - Method 1</b>			
16				
17				
18				
20				

Figure 2.32: Reverse string (Method 1)

#### Method 2

Reverse a string (method 2 of 2) – Using **CONCAT** with **SEQUENCE** as shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.33: Reverse string (Method 2)

# Sort Text in alphabetical order

The string in cell A2, which contains only lowercase letters, is sorted in alphabetical order. The "a" defined by the LET function replaces the reference to cell A2:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	Μ
1	Before		After										
2	dabecf		abcdef										
3				λ									
4				$\mathbf{N}$									
5													
6			=CONCAT(	LET(a,	42,SOR	T(MID(a	a,SEQU	ENCE(	LEN(a)	),1))))			
7													
8													
9													
10													
11													
12		Sort tex	t alphabeti	cally									
13													
14													

Figure 2.34: Sort text in alphabetical order

# How many words are there in the cell without the separator (SEQUENCE)

In this example, we count the number of *words* in the cell. A word, for that matter, is any combination of characters which is different from the separator. The separator is defined in cell E1 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.35: How many words are there in the cell A2 without the separator? (SEQUENCE function)

# How many words are there in the cell without the separator (TEXTSPLIT)

A shorter alternative to the previous example, using the more advanced function: **TEXTSPLIT** (which is explained in *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*):



Figure 2.36: How many words are there in cell A2 without the separator? (TEXTSPLIT function)

## Off with their heads

In this example, we *chop off* one character from the original string (defined in Cell F1) as shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.37: "off with their heads" - chopping one character at a time from the "head" of the string

# Extract only digits and add a separator

Removing all non-numeric characters from cell A3. Each group of consecutive digits is then separated by the separator defined in cell F2:



Figure 2.38: Extract only digits and add a separator (defined in cell F2)

# How many lower-case letters are there in the cell Method 1

Counting the number of lower-case letters in each cell (A2:A4) - Method 1:



Figure 2.39: How many lower-case letters are there in the cell (Method 1)

#### Method 2

Counting the number of lower-case letters in each cell (A2:A4) – Method 2.

This formula uses the more advanced function LET (mentioned in *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*):



Figure 2.40: How many lower-case letters are there in the cell (Method2)

# All Greek letters in one formula

Generating the list of all the Greek letters. The Greek characters are not a part of the standard ASCII character set; therefore, we used the **UNICHAR** function (that uses the more comprehensive **UNICODE** character set) instead of the **CHAR** function as illustrated in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.41: All Greek letters in one formula

# Find last word in cell Method 1 of 3

Finding the last word in cell A1 (Using LOOKUP and SEQUENCE) – Method 1:



Figure 2.42: Find last word in cell using SEQUENCE (Method 1 of 3)

#### Method 2 of 3

Finding the last word in cell A1 (Using MAX, FIND and SEQUENCE) – Method 2:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	Μ	Ν
1	My name is Meni Porat													
2														
3														
4					Porat									
5				1										
6														
7														
8				/										
9				<u> </u>										
10		=MID(	(A1,MA)	X(IFEI	ROR(FI	<u>ND(" ",</u>	A1,SEC	QUENC	CE(LEI	N(A1))),	""))+1,	LEN(A	1))	
11														
12														
13														
14														
15	Find last Word in c	ell - Mo	ethod 2											
16														
17														
18														
19														
20														
21														
22														

Figure 2.43: Find last word in cell using SEQUENCE (Method 2 of 3)

#### Method 3 of 3

A shorter alternative to the previous examples (*Figures 2.42* and *Figure 2.43*), using the more advanced function: **TEXTAFTER** (which was explained in *Chapter 1*, *Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*):



Figure 2.44: Find last word in cell – using TEXTAFTER (Method 3 of 3)

# Number of characters in cell (without the separator)

In our example, the separator defined in the parameter is "" (blank). The formula "trims" any additional blanks between the words (as, for example, between "saw" and "Elba" where there are two blank characters).



Figure 2.45: Number of characters in cell without the separator

# Number of non-empty cells in a column

Finding the number of non-empty cells in the entire column is shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.46: Number of non-empty cells in column A

# **Strip leading and trailing digits** Method 1 of 2

Removing leading and trailing digits using LET, SEQUENCE and CONCAT (method 1):



Figure 2.47: Strip leading and trailing digits (Method 1)

#### Method 2 of 2

Removing leading and trailing digits using LET, SEQUENCE and TEXTJOIN (method 2):



Figure 2.48: Strip leading and trailing digits (Method 2)
### Increasing Text from end to start

We start from the last character of the sentence (in cell D1) and each consecutive cell contains one more character, till we reach the full-blown sentence:



Figure 2.49: "Increasing" text from End to Start

## Increasing Text from start to end

We start from the first character of the sentence (in cell D1) and each consecutive cell contains one more character, till we reach the full-blown sentence as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.50: "Increasing" text from Start to End

## Hebrew Gematria (Formula)

Gematria is the practice of assigning numerical values to Alphabet letters and summing up these values (for a word, phrase, or sentence). Gtable (A6:E33 as shown in *figure 2.52*) is an Excel table where for each Hebrew letter a numeric value is given as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	I	J	Κ
1	Text	Value									
2	אבא	4									
3		<u> </u>									
4	=SUM(IFNA(I	LOOKUP(MID(A	<b>12,SI</b>	EQUENCE(LEN(	A2)),1),Gtable[I	Letter],Gtable[Num	eric valu	ie]),0),)			
5											
6	Letter -	Numeric value 🗸									
7	א	1									
8	2	2									
9	ډ	3									
10	т	4									
11	ה	5									
12	1	6									
13	1	/		II I	4						
14	ח	8		Hebrew Gema	atria						
15	υ	9		Each letter in	the Hebrew A	Alphabet has a 1	unique	value			
16	,	10		The Value in I	B2 is the sum	of all the chara	cters' v	alue in A2.			
17	c	20		The value for	each charact	er is being LOO	<mark>)KUP-ε</mark>	ed in the Gtab	le		
18	Т	20									
19	ל	30									
20	מ	40									
21	D	40									
22	د	50									
23	۱	50									
24	ס	60									
25	ע	70									
26	٩	80									

Figure 2.51: Hebrew Gematria (Formula)

# Hebrew Gematria (Gtable – Translation table)

This is the translation table used in the solution displayed in the previous section: **Hebrew Gematria (Formula)** as shown in the following screenshot:

Letter	Numeric value 🚽
2	κ 1
=	1 2
:	3
-	r 4
ī	n 5
	n 6
	7
Г	n 8
Ľ	9
	» 10
	20
-	r 20
L	, 30
<u> </u>	v 40
C	o 40
:	50
	1 50
٦	o <u>60</u>
لا	v 70
<u> </u>	o <u>80</u>
	1 80
2	s <u>90</u>
	( 90
<u></u>	v 100
-	200
v	300
T	400

Figure 2.52: Hebrew Gematria (Gtable – Translation table)

# **Extract only Country Names**

This is how to extract only the country names from a long string:

The inner function (**TEXTSPLIT**) splits the text by any digit (0-9) which removes all the digits. Then, the outer function (**FILTER**) filters out every comma (","), because its length is 1:

		1				
	11China2,000,000 2India1,450,000 3United States1,390,000 44North					
1	Korea1,200,000 543Russia850,000					
2						
3						
4		China	India	United States	North Korea	Russia
5	1					
6						
7						
8	=LET(x,TEXTSPLIT(A1,CHAR(SEQUENCE(10,,48))),FI	LTER(x,L	.EN(x)>1))			
9						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14	Extracting only country names from a long string:					
15	<b>TEXTSPLIT</b> "splits" the string by digits (0-9) which	removes	them fron	n the string		
16	then, we filter out only cells whose length > 1, which r	emoves a	ll the com	mas		
17						
18	Extract only country names					
19						

Figure 2.53: Extract only country names

# How many occurrences of a String starting from a certain position

We are looking for the number of times the parameter string (defined in cell: D2) appears in cell A2, but we start at the position specified in the "starting from" parameter (cell: F2) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.54: How many times does the search string appear, starting from a certain position

# **Remove Diacritics from Hebrew words**

The Hebrew languages has Diacritics, and special symbols that help pronounce the syllables correctly (since there are no vowels in Hebrew).

Sometimes, we want to remove these Diacritics as they usually do not appear in books, articles, internet sites, and so on. This is illustrated in the following figure:



Figure 2.55: Remove Diacritics from Hebrew Words

# Is it a Palindrome (Arabic)

A palindrome is a word, phrase or sentence that can be read exactly the same from beginning to end as well as from end to beginning.

Here we check three Arabic words to find out whether they are palindromes or not.

Another example of a Palindrome checking can be found above, in the section: *Is it a Palindrome?* (*Figure 2.27*)



Figure 2.56: Is it a Palindrome (Arabic)

# **Convert Hebrew letters into English letters**

This formula helps solve an issue that is very common for bilingual keyboards users. If, for example, you type both in Hebrew and English, sometimes you unitentionally forget to switch to English while typing in Hebrew. The result is *gibberish* (as can be

seen in cells A1 and C1). So, instead of erasing the contents of the entire cell, use the formula to convert "gibberish" into English as shown in the following screenshot:

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N	0	Р	Q	R	S	Т
מרויג קרדם מרויג אין קרדם א מרויג אין						
		Keyboard "tra	inslation" Table			
		Hebrew	English			
Helio world Helio World		м	t			
		2	c			
		د	d			
		۲	s			
		n	v			
		,	u			
		1	z			
1 =Le1(III;MID(A1,SEQUENCE(LEN(A1),,1),1);1EX1JOIN(***,(IF(III>CHAR(224),VLOOKUP(III;P4:Q30,2,0),III7)))	)	n	J			
		U	<u>y</u>			
		,	n 1			
			c			
			k			
7		-	0			
When you use more than more language on your keyboard						
constructions you use in the wrong language of your keybolics		,2	,			
sometimes you are in the wrong language and you need to convert (for example)		1				
all the Hebrew Letters into English Letters.		د	b			
So, the formula above saves the time, bother and frustration		7	x			
2 of re-keying all the Hebrew letters as English letters		لا	g			
3		1	;			
		د	р			
5		۲				
δ		z	m			
		<u>ק</u>	e			
		7	r			
			а —			
			,			

Figure 2.57: Convert Hebrew Letters into English Letters

# Fetch description of Nth item of a non-sorted Key

We want to find the Nth (in our case: 5th, defined as a parameter in cell: E2) for Cat. No. 2 (defined as a parameter in cell: D2) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 2.58: Fetch Description of the Nth (5th) occurrence of a non-sorted Key (Column A: Cat.No.)

# Extract letters only from a chosen language (Formula)

The formula in the following figure extract only letters of the language chosen in cell J2 (which is a validation list, as can be seen in the next section:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Η	I	J	K	L	М	N	0
1	з4G4+мп5е+€s5tда6л				Language	From	То								
2					Hebrew	1488	1514			LC English	- 97	122			
3					Arabic	1571	1610				/				
4					Russian	1072	1105								
5		rest			UC English	65	90								
6	1				LC English	97	122								
7										/					
8					=INDEX(F2	:F6,(MA	TCH(J	2,E2:I	26,0))		=IND	EX(G2:	<b>G6,(M</b> /	ATCH(J2,	E <b>2:E6,0)))</b>
9															
10															
11	=IFERROR(LET(sq.	,MID(	\$A1,SE	QUE	NCE(LEN(\$A	. <b>1)),1),un</b> ,	UNICO	)DE(s	q),CONO	CAT(FILTE	R(sq,(u	<b>&gt;=\$K\$</b>	62)*(un<	≔\$L\$2))))	,"")
12															
13	Extracting only cha	aracte	rs that	beloi	ig to the cho	sen lang	uage:								
14	Cell J2 is a Validat	ion Li	st.												
15	In our example onl	y Low	er cas	e lette	rs will be ex	tracted f	from A	1							
16	and displayed in B	5, sinc	e "LC	Engl	ish" was cho	osen.									
17	For each language,	, a ran	ge of l	JNIC	ODE charac	ters is d	efined								
18	Of course, one can	enhar	ice the	lang	iages list (ce	lls: E2:C	<del>7</del> 6).								
19	Don't forget to add	l the n	ew lan	guage	e to the Valid	lation L	ist.								
20															

Figure 2.59: Extract only letters from the Language chosen in J2 (Validation List)

# Extract letters only from a chosen language (Validation list)

Here is the Validation list in cell J2 that selects the language whose letters should be extracted from cell A1 (see previous section, *Extract letters only from a chosen language (Formula)*):

Е	F	G	Η	Ι	J	K	L	Μ
Language	From	То						
Hebrew	1488	1514			LC English	<b>-</b> 97	122	
Arabic	1571	1610			Hebrew Arabic			
Russian	1072	1105			Russian UC English			
UC English	65	90			LC English			
LC English	97	122						
=INDEX(F2	:F6,(MA	TCH(J	2,E2:	E6,0)))		=IND	EX(G2:	<b>G6,(MA</b>

Figure 2.60: The Validation List (Cell: J2) contains all the Languages on the list (E1:G6)

# Gematria in English Method 1

Gematria (as explained above, in the section, *Hebrew Gematria (Formula)*, see *Figure* 2.51) is the practice of assigning numerical values to Alphabet letters and summing up these values (for a word, phrase or sentence). The dataset (K1:L27) is an Excel table where for each English letter a numeric value is given.

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	7	G	Н	I	J	K	L	м
1	Text		Value			Simple	English Ge	ematria Chart:				Letter	Value	
2	King Henry		111			A=1 B=2	J=10 K=11	S=19 T=20				9	1	
3	iting from y					C=3 D=4	L=12 M=13	U=21 V=22				h	2	
1						E=5	N=14 0=15	W=23 X=24				6	3	
5						G=7	P=16	Y=25				d	4	
6		/				H=8 I=9	Q=17 R=18	Z=26				e	5	
7	=SUM(IFNA	(LOOK	UP(MID	(A2,SEQUEN	CE(LEN(	A2)),1),I	K2:K2'	7,L2:L27)	,0),)			f	6	
8												g	7	
9												ĥ	8	
10												i	9	
11												j	10	
12												k	11	
13												1	12	
14	What is Ger	natria?	' Gemat	ria is the pra	ctice of as	ssigning	<mark>g nume</mark>	erical val	ues to	letters		m	13	
15	and summin	ng up tl	hese val	eues (for a w	ord, phra	se or se	ntence	e)				n	14	
16	The method	l used h	iere is L	<b>OOKUP-ing</b>	each Eng	<mark>glish let</mark> t	ter's va	alue in a	table.			o	15	
17												р	16	
18												q	17	
19												r	18	
20												s	19	
21	You can cor	npare i	results i	nteractively v	vith this i	nterent	site:					t	20	
22	https://calcula	tor-onlin	e.net/gem	atria-calculato	<u>r/</u>							u	21	
23												v	22	
24												w	23	
25												х	24	
26												у	25	
27												z	26	

Method 1: using SUM and LOOKUP:

Figure 2.61: Gematria in English – Method 1

## Method 2

Gematria (as explained above, in the section *Hebrew Gematria (Formula)*) is the practice of assigning numerical values to alphabet letters and summing up these values (for a word, phrase or sentence).

**Method 2**: We do not need a table, as in the previous solution. We subtract 96 from each ASCII value (since a = 97, b = 98, c = 99 etc.). In case there are both upper-case and lower-case letters, we convert them all to lower-case since their values are the same. The formula ignores any characters that do not belong to the English alphabet as shown in the following figure:



Figure 2.62: Gematria in English – Method 2

## How many Words are there in a Range?

This example is similar to the one demonstrated in Section: How many words are there in the cell (version 2), *Figure 2.3*. Both examples use the **TEXTSPLIT** function (explained in *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*). Cells A1:A3 hold several words separated by space/s. The **TRIM** function removes spaces from the beginning and end of each cell. In addition, it leaves only one space between words. Then the **TEXTJOIN** function combines all the words in the range where a delimiter (space) is inserted between every text item. The **TEXTSPLIT** splits the string by that same delimiter into distinct cells. Finally, the **COUNTA** function counts the number of cells created by **TEXTSPLIT**:



Figure 2.63: How many words are there in a range

# **Extract only non-digits from String**

The string in cell A2 contains both digits and non-digits. We want to remove all the digits from the string. We split the string into its components and build it back (without the digits) by concatenating each and every character of the original string that is not a digit. The **LET** function is used to avoid repetition of that part of the formula which splits the string **MID(\$A2,SEQUENCE(LEN(\$A2)),1)** as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G
1	Before		After				
2	J1o2h5h 45F. 3Ke4n4n4e9dy 1962		Johh F. Kennedy				
3	0A1b2r3a4h5a6m7 L8i9n1c12o13l14n 1862		Abraham Lincoln				
4							
5		/					
6							
7							
8	=LET(sq,MID(\$A2,SEQUENCE(LEN(\$A2	2)),1),C	CONCAT(IF(ISNUMI	BER(se	q),'''',sq	)))	
9							
10							
11							
12	Extract only not-numbers from str	ing					
13							
14							
15							

Figure 2.64: Extract only non-digits from string

# Find Unicode value for any character in the string, no matter which language

The **UNICODE** combined with **SEQUENCE** brings each character's **UNICODE** value. It does not matter if we have text from more than one language:



Figure 2.65: Find Unicode value for any character

# Conclusion

This chapter illustrated more than 60 cases of SEQUENCE usage with textual operations.

The next chapter will discuss the utilization of SEQUENCE when dealing with numbers.

# Points to remember

- SEQUENCE can handle text from any direction (from beginning to end or: from end to beginning).
- SEQUENCE can easily split any text, in any language.
- SEQUENCE can easily extract parts of text: only letters, only digits, only special characters, and so on.
- SEQUENCE can effortlessly "translate" text.
- SEQUENCE can duplicate strings.
- SEQUENCE can generate series of strings, for example: The Alphabet of languages.
- SEQUENCE is capable of transposing text: vertical to horizontal and vice versa.
- SEQUENCE can assist us with removing unnecessary characters from text.

## Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

#### https://discord.bpbonline.com



# CHAPTER 3 Using SEQUENCE with Numbers

# Introduction

This chapter will demonstrate how to employ the **SEQUENCE** function when dealing with numbers. In a spreadsheet, numbers are the *bread and butter* of Excel. The **SEQUENCE** function has many tricks "up her sleeve" to handle sundry cases where manipulation with numbers is needed. Sometimes, as we will see in several instances, the data is inexistent, and the **SEQUENCE** function has to generate data out of nothing.

# Structure

In this chapter, we will discuss the following topics:

- Examples of **SEQUENCE** with numbers
  - Five methods to generate 12 positive integers
  - Five methods to generate 12 negative integers
  - Descending **SEQUENCE** Two methods
  - Duplicate cell horizontally
  - Duplicate cell vertically
  - Duplicate numbers

- Creating a vertical SEQUENCE of numbers 2 methods
- Find missing numbers in a list
- o Reverse a number
- Reverse a horizontal ascending array
- Reverse a horizontal descending array
- SEQUENCE of odd and even numbers
- o Sum all digits in a cell which has only digits
- Sum all digits in a cell which has digits and text
- Sum every Nth row
- Sum the largest N numbers
- Sum the smallest N numbers
- Two tricks with **SEQUENCE** (ROW())
- SUM (**SEQUENCE** (virtual array))
- o Alternate 1s and 0s
- Dynamic **SEQUENCE**
- Two methods to extract a number from string's end
- o Two methods to extract a number from string's start
- Find N largest numbers (Asc.)
- Find N largest numbers (Desc.)
- How many columns in a sheet
- o How many digits
- Reverse numbers horizontally by a parameter
- Reverse order of SEQUENCE of numbers
- Subject with the highest score
- SEQUENCE based on number of unique values
- o Dynamic frequency based on dynamic bins
- SEQUENCE column
- Building a chessboard in three steps
- o Creating N-digit number with the same digit repeated N times

# Objectives

After reading this chapter, you will be able to perform many Excel tasks, like handling numbers, generating an array, reversing an array's order, summing part of an array, and so on. Applying the methods exemplified and explained in this chapter will save you a lot of time and effort. The **SEQUENCE** function is extremely useful with handling numbers in myriad situations in Excel. Understanding and practicing this chapter's examples will immensely improve your level of aptitude in Excel.

# **Examples of SEQUENCE with numbers**

We will now discuss in detail the examples of applying the **SEQUENCE** function in numerical operations. Please be aware of the fact that we are not going to deliberate upon mathematical issues, but only on numbers as integers. The integration of **SEQUENCE** with mathematics will be explained in *Chapter 7, SEQUENCE - The Ancilla of Math.* 

# Five methods to generate 12 positive integers

The following five examples exhibit five methods of creating a vertical array of 12 numbers, using only the first argument of the function: **ROWS**. The number of desired rows (12) is contrived by five different methods: explicit number, Excel generated number (The **ROWS()** function), the number of the year's months from a fictitious date and a range of column names which yields the desired number.

# Method 1

This is the simplest way to generate the first twelve natural numbers with **SEQUENCE**:



Figure 3.1: Generate 12 positive integers - Method 1

#### Method 2

Another variation with **SEQUENCE** is using the **ROW** function. This function returns the (row) number of a reference:



Figure 3.2: Generate 12 positive integers - Method 2

### Method 3

The **SEQUENCE** function combined with **ROWS**. The **ROWS** function returns the count of rows of the reference. The reference can be a range of cells (that is, A1:A12) or a range of numbers (as in our example):



Figure 3.3: Generate 12 positive integers - Method 3

#### Method 4

Here, we use the number of months in a year to produce the first twelve integers. The expression: **DATE(1,1,)** creates the date: 31/12/1900 and the **MONTH** function that wraps it, yields the month number of this date: 12 as shown in the following figure:



Figure 3.4: Generate 12 positive integers - Method 4

#### Method 5

The **COLUMNS** function returns the number of columns in a reference. In our example, the range of columns A:L has twelve columns:



Figure 3.5: Generate 12 positive integers - Method 5

### Five methods to generate 12 negative integers

In this section, we will look at five techniques to create a **SEQUENCE** of 12 negative numbers. Some of them use the same techniques used above to initiate positive numbers, but the result is multiplied by -1. Other techniques use more than one argument of the **SEQUENCE** function, where the Starting number and Increment are both negative. The last example illustrates a lesser-known *trick* in Excel: instead of beginning the formula with the obvious equal sign (=) which precedes any formula, we establish the negative numbers with the minus sign (-) without specifying the =.

## Method 1

Generating 10 consecutive negative integers. The third argument (-1) tells the function which number to start with. The fourth argument (-1) tells that the increment is negative as shown in the following figure:



Figure 3.6: Negative SEQUENCE – Method 1

#### Method 2

Multiplication of a positive array by (-1) turns the entire array into a negative one:



Figure 3.7: Negative SEQUENCE – Method 2

### Method 3

In the following figure we create a horizontal array, and then transpose it vertically:



*Figure 3.8*: Negative SEQUENCE – Method 3

### Method 4

This picture is similar to *Figure 3.3*. The only difference is that we multiply the result by (-1) for a negative array:



Figure 3.9: Negative SEQUENCE – Method 4

### Method 5

The minus sign (-) following the equals sign (=) which starts every formula in Excel, not only causes the array to be negative: it also makes the (=) superfluous. We could have written the formula without it as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.10: Negative SEQUENCE – Method 5

# **Descending SEQUENCE – Two methods**

Using a parameter, we demonstrate two procedures to initiate an array of descending numbers. The parameter specifies the size of the array as well as the number with

which to begin the array. The second procedure combines the **SORT** function with the **SEQUENCE**: we need to sort the array in descending order such that its elements are arranged from largest to smallest.

### Method 1

The parameter (in cell **G1**) tells the **SEQUENCE** function both the size of the array and its starting number. Since the last argument is (-1) this is a descending sequence:



Figure 3.11: Descending SEQUENCE – Method 1

#### Method 2

Wrapping the **SORT** function around the **SEQUENCE** function: **SEQUENCE** returns an ascending 12-member array which is then converted to a descending array by the **SORT** function:



Figure 3.12: Descending SEQUENCE – Method 2

# **Duplicate cell horizontally**

The value in cell A2 is duplicated 10 times (the duplication factor is defined as a parameter in cell M2). The value in A2 is pointed by the **INDIRECT** of the value defined in cell L2. The **INDIRECT** function *translates* the text (in cell L2) into a valid Excel reference. The **TEXT** part of the formula generates 10 empty horizontal cells which are concatenated to the value in A2 to create a textual array. Multiplying this array by 1 converts the text array into a numeric one as shown in the following figure:



Figure 3.13: Duplicate Cell Horizontally

# **Duplicate cell vertically**

The techniques used here are similar to the ones used in the previous section, only the **SEQUENCE** here returns a vertical array and not a horizontal one. The double-minus (--) at the beginning of the formula transforms the textual array into a numeric array as shown in the following figure:



Figure 3.14: Duplicate Cell vertically

# **Duplicate numbers**

The Duplication factor in cell O2 determines the number of occurrences for each number. Since the last argument of the **SEQUENCE** ("increment") is a fraction, the **INT** function turns the first 6 items into the number: 1, the next 6 items into: 2, and so on as shown in the following figure:



Figure 3.15: Duplicate numbers

# Creating a vertical SEQUENCE of numbers – Two methods

The following two pictures demonstrate how to generate a vertical **SEQUENCE** of numbers using an old method **ROW()** and our acquaintance **SEQUENCE**. The advantage of **SEQUENCE** over the old method is not so obvious in the first picture, though it is quite clear in the second one, with the parameter. The old method becomes much less intuitive when using a parameter (always better than *hard-coded* values within the formula). It is noteworthy to mention that the **ROW** function will not create the integer **SEQUENCE** 1-6 if moved to a different starting row, since **ROW()** always points to the row number in which it is defined:



#### Method 1: Creating a sequence of numbers without a parameter

*Figure 3.16*: *Two methods to create a vertical SEQUENCE of numbers (without a parameter)* 



Method 2: Creating a sequence of numbers with a parameter

Figure 3.17: Two methods to create a vertical SEQUENCE of numbers (with a parameter)

# Find missing numbers in a list

Suppose you have an unordered, incomplete list of numbers, and you want to know which numbers are missing from the list. The new **Dynamic Array Function (DAF)**, **TOCOL**, (explained in *Chapter 1, A short introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365)*, together with **SEQUENCE**, generates the list of missing numbers. The formula does not need to know in advance what is the largest number in the original list as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.18: Find the missing numbers in a list

# Reverse a Number

The following example displays a simple procedure to reverse a number. The last argument of the **SEQUENCE** function is negative: (-1) which tells Excel to create a reverse (decending) **SEQUENCE**, and then the MID function splits the *reversed* **SEQUENCE** into N consecutive horizontal cells (where N is the length of the original number).

Even though all the numbers are left-aligned (as if they were text), they are numbers, nevertheless:



Figure 3.19: Reverse a number

## Reverse a horizontal ascending array

In cells A2:J2 we have an array of 10 consecutive numbers. We do not know in advance whether it is an ascending (first item=1) or descending (first item>1) array.

Since we skipped the first argument (there are no rows in the array), the array's size is decided by the second argument (COUNT(2:2)) which returns the number of non-empty cells in row number 2. The array's starting number is established by the third argument (identical to the second) and the last argument determines whether the resulting array is going to be ascending or descending as shown in the following screenshot. Another very interesting feature of this formula is the fact that if we move the array in row 2, the formula "adapts itself" automatically to the array's new starting location:



Figure 3.20: Reverse horizontal ascending array

# Reverse a horizontal descending array

This example utilizes the same technique as in the previous section. The formula reverses a descending array into an ascending one as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.21: Reverse horizontal descending array

## **SEQUENCE** of odd and even numbers

The only difference between the two formulae is the third argument: 1 for odd numbers, and 2 for even numbers as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.22: SEQUENCE of odd and even numbers

# Sum all digits in a cell which has only digits

The inner part of the formula *splits* the number into separate digits, which are then SUMmed by the outer function as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.23: SUM all digits in a cell containing only digits

# Sum all digits in a cell which has digits and text

The inner part of the formula *splits* the number into separate digits and ignores nondigit characters, which are then SUMmed by the outer function as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.24: SUM all digits in a cell containing digits and text

## Sum every Nth row

The formula first locates all the numbers in the dataset whose location is divisible by 3 (3<sup>rd</sup>,6<sup>th</sup>,9<sup>th</sup>) [numbers divisible by 3 have no remainder]. These numbers are then SUMmed up by the **SUMPRODUCT** function as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.25: SUM every Nth row

# Sum the largest N numbers

The **LARGE** function returns the N(3) largest numbers, which are then SUMmed by the **SUMPRODUCT** function as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.26: SUM largest N numbers

### Sum the smallest N numbers

This example is similar to the previous one, but here the **SMALL** function returns the three smallest numbers as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.27: SUM smallest N numbers

# Two tricks with SEQUENCE (ROW())

This is really interesting: the row on which you type this formula: **SEQUENCE(ROW())**, is the number of members in the array. As can be seen in *Figure 3.28*, if you type the formula on row no. 5, the formula creates the **SEQUENCE** : 1,2,3,4,5. If you type the formula on row no. 8, the array: 1,2,...8 is generated.

### Create a SEQUENCE of n Rows starting from Row(n)

If we type the formula: **=SEQUENCE(ROW())** in any row, the formula generates a sequence of n integers, where n is equal to the row number. You do not need to specify the array's size.

For example, if we type the formula in row 5, we get a sequence of the first 5 natural numbers. If the formula is written in row 8, it yields a sequence of the first 8 natural numbers.



Figure 3.28: Create a SEQUENCE of n Rows starting from Row(n)

## SUM a virtual array created by SEQUENCE (ROW())

Let us take the example in the previous subsection one step further. Now we want to SUM the array that the **SEQUENCE(ROW())** formula generated when typed on certain row. The result will be the sum of the array without a "physical" array! The array that is SUMmed is virtual: It exists only in Excel's memory, it does not "reveal" itself on the spreadsheet!



Figure 3.29: SUM a Virtual Array created by SEQUENCE (ROW())

# **SUM SEQUENCE (virtual array)**

Another interesting demonstration of the unique feature of **SEQUENCE** manifested in the previous subsection: A *real* array is engendered by the **SEQUENCE** function however it becomes *virtual* if we wrap it with the **SUM** function as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.30: SUM&SEQUENCE (virtual array)

# Alternate 1s and 0s

In cell B2 we have five zeroes (00000) preceded by five ones (11111). We engender an array of 1's and 0's, where the **TEXTJOIN** function joins the first five digits of cell B2 with the last five digits as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.31: Alternate 1s and 0s

# **Dynamic SEQUENCE**

Three parameters shape this array: the first (in cell G1) sets the number of items, the second (in cell J1) sets the starting number and the third (in cell M1) assigns the increment as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.32: Dynamic SEQUENCE

# Two methods to extract a number from the string's end

This section will demonstrate two methods of extracting a number that appears at the end of a string, and preceded by non-digits.

## Method 1

The formula finds the cell's first integer location (in our case, the 4th character) and then extracts all the digits from that location to the end of the string. The assumption here is that all the cell's digits appear at the cell's end:



Figure 3.33: Extract a number from the string's end – Method 1

## Method 2

This screenshot exemplifies the use of two new DAF function, **TEXTAFTER** and **VSTACK**, (explained in *Chapter 1*, *A short introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*). The **VSTACK** function *piles up* all non-numeric characters (preceding 0, CHAR(48) and succeeding 9, CHAR(57)). Then the **TEXTAFTER** function returns the text after the last occurrence of the non-digits (the third argument to the function is: -1):



Figure 3.34: Extract a number from the string's end – Method 2

# Two methods to extract a number from the string's start

This section will demonstrate two methods of extracting a number that appears at the beginning of a string before any non-numeric characters.

# Method 1

The **MATCH** function retrieves the location of the first non-digit character (in our case: 4). Then the **LEFT** function extracts 4-1 = 3 characters from the string's start as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.35: Extract a number from the string's start – Method 1

### Method 2

The technique used here is similar to the one used in the previous section, method 2. But instead of using the **TEXTAFTER** function, we use the **TEXTBEFORE** (this function is explained in: *Chapter 1, A short introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*). The third argument to the function is omitted, since we use the default: instance number=1 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.36: Extract a number from the string's start – Method 2

# Find N largest numbers (Ascending)

The **LARGE** function extracts the 3 (parameter in cell G1) largest numbers from the dataset in Column B. Since the last parameter of **SEQUENCE** is -1, the result shown in ascending order (from small to large) is illustrated in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L
1						numbers to extract	3					
2												
3		Numbers array		largest numbers								
4		12		509								
5		15		567								
6		128		1044								
7		8										
8		78										
9		567		=LARGE(B4:B1	6,SEQ	UENCE(G1,,G1,-1))						
10		89										
11		98										
12		419										
13		509										
14		233										
15		65										
16		1044										
17												
18			Find 1	n (parameter)	larges	t numbers in a rai	nge.					
19			The r	esult: in ascene	ling of	rder						
20												

Figure 3.37: Find N largest Numbers(Asc.)

# Find N largest numbers (Descending)

The **LARGE** function extracts the 3 (parameter in cell G1) largest numbers from the dataset in Column B. Since the last parameter of **SEQUENCE** is 1, the result is shown in descending order (from large to small) as shown in the following screenshot:

	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I
1					numbers to extract	3		
2								
3	Numbers array		largest numbers					
4	12		1044					
5	15		567					
6	128		509					
7	8							
8	78							
9	567		=LARGE(B4:E	16,SE	QUENCE(G1))			
10	89							
11	98							
12	419							
13	509							
14	233							
15	65							
16	1044							
17								
18		Find 1	n (parameter)	largest	t numbers in a rai	nge.		
19		The r	esult: in descer	iding o	order			
20								

Figure 3.38: Find N largest Numbers(Desc.)
#### How many columns in a sheet

This formula is quite complicated and deserves an explanation:

First, the MID function with the SEQUENCE function yields the 3-character array, "X";"F";"D" since the string length in A2 is 3, and 3-len(A2)= 0. When concatenated with A2, we get the string in cell A2. Then, the **CODE** function *translates* each letter of the array into its ASCII code: X=88, F=70, D=68. Further, we subtract 64 from each of these values since the ASCII codes for uppercase English letters starts with A=65. So, the result is this numeric array: {24; 6; 4}.

Finally, we multiply each number of the array by: 26<sup>2</sup>, 26<sup>1</sup> and 26<sup>0</sup> and sum the result:



 $24^{*}26^{2} + 6^{*}26^{1} + 4^{*}26^{0} = 16224 + 156 + 4 = 16384.$ 

Figure 3.39: How many columns in a sheet

### How many digits

The **MID** function in unison with the **SEQUENCE** function extracts only digits from the string in cell A2. Then, these digits are concatenated into a single number, and

finally the LEN function returns this number's length as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.40: How many digits

#### Reverse numbers horizontally by a parameter

The formula suggested here is a simpler procedure to reverse a number (compare subsections *Descending Sequence - method 1, Figure 3.11*) and *Descending Sequence - method 2, Figure 3.12*). A parameter (in cell K1) sets the array's size, both the original one (in A2) and the reversed one (in A10) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.41: Reverse numbers horizontally by a parameter

#### **Reverse order of a SEQUENCE of numbers**

A dynamic table in column A (*Tnum*) is a table of natural numbers (integers greater than 0), ordered consecutively in ascending order. The array contrived in column C reverses the order of the original table. Since we are dealing with a dynamic table, adding new numbers to the table will automatically update the array in column C as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.42: Reverse order of a SEQUENCE of numbers

# Subject with the highest score

This is basically an **INDEX-MATCH** formula, where the *traditional* **MATCH** is replaced by the **SUMPRODUCT** function: the search for the largest number in the range A2:D13 generates an bi-dimensional (4\*12) array in which only one value is **TRUE** (1). This array is multiplied by the one-dimensional array created by the **SEQUENCE** function (4 elements, since we have 4 columns). The result of this multiplication is the column where we have the highest score: the 4th column, which is the Sciences subject as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	К	L	М	Ν	0
1	Math	English	History	Sciences											
2	84	43	76	36											
3	67	95	51	81											
4	92	93	49	99		Sciences									
5	79	36	75	66			<b>N</b>								
6	85	84	87	64											
7	45	26	80	92											
8	54	10	35	81		=INDEX	(A1:D1,S	UMPROI	DUCT((A	2:D13=M	IAX(A2:D	13))*(SEC	QUENCE	(,4))))	
9	58	70	54	88											
10	65	66	97	71											
11	97	12	35	19											
12	91	81	80	39											
13	34	39	10	47											
14															
15															
16		In which	ı subject	did I get	the	highest s	core?								
17															
18															
19															
20															
22															

Figure 3.43: Subject with the highest score

#### **SEQUENCE** based on number of unique values

For each unique item in list 1 (sorted in ascending order, column B) we add an index number (column G). There are seven items in unique List1 (column F), so the array produced by the **SEQUENCE** function has seven index numbers as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.44: SEQUENCE based on number of unique values

#### Dynamic frequency based on dynamic bins

The **FREQUENCY** function in Excel is used to sum vertically the number of items for each bin in the bins array (Column E). The bins array is built dynamically according to three parameters in: H1, J1, L1 which are, respectively, the number of bins (10), the start of the array (50) and the step/increment for item in the array. The **FREQUENCY** function (in Column C) counts all the items for each bin. For example, in the first bin (50) there is only one number (45) which is less than or equal to 50. In the 100<sup>th</sup> bin we have 4 numbers: 96, 96, 98, 99, and so on.

Please pay attention to the notation of the second argument of the **FREQUENCY** function. The # in the E2# denotes the Spilled Range Operator. E2# is the array created by the **SEQUENCE** function as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.45: Dynamic frequency based on dynamic bins

### **SEQUENCE** column

Both formulae (in A1 and in A10) yield the same result: the number 10 is *spilled* all over row 1 and row 10. The size of the upper and lower arrays is the same: all columns of the worksheet as shown in the following figure:



Figure 3.46: SEQUENCE column

#### **SEQUENCE and COLUMNS**

The result of: **COLUMNS(1:1)** is the number of the worksheet's columns (=16384). When *wrapping* this number with the **SEQUENCE** function, we obtain a vertical array of 16384 rows as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.47: SEQUENCE and COLUMNS

#### **Building a chessboard in three steps**

This section is going to explain (in three steps) how to build a chessboard in Excel.

#### **Chessboard - Step 1**

Step 1: The formula

**=IF(ISODD(COLUMN()),BITAND(SEQUENCE(8),1),--NOT(BITAND(SEQUENCE (8),1)))** creates a bi-dimensional array (8\*8). It is written in Cell A1 and then dragged down to cell A8.

This formula generates alternate 1's and 0's so that next to each cell containing 1, there are only cells containing 0 (left, right, beneath and above). In odd Column numbers (A,C,E,G) the function **BITAND(SEQUENCE(8),1)** produces alternate 1's and 0's starting with 1: {1;0;1;0;1;0;1;0}. For each odd number in the array defined in the function's first argument: **SEQUENCE(8)**, the function generates 1 and for each even number in that array the function begets 0. That is how a **SEQUENCE** of 8 alternate 1's and 0's is created.

However, in even Column numbers (B,D,F,H) the function **NOT(BITAND(SEQUENCE (8),1))** produces the opposite array: {0;1;0;1;0;1;0;1}. Here the process is reversed with the **NOT** operator: for each 1 on an odd column number, a 0 is generated whereas for each 0 on such column number, a 1 is engendered.



Figure 3.48: Chessboard - Step 1

#### **Chessboard - Step 2**

Step 2: We resize the array originated in *Step 1* to create 64 square cells: the height of each cell is equal to its width as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.49: Chessboard - step 2

#### **Chessboard - Step 3**

Step 3: First, we employ the Conditional Formatting feature in order to *paint* black each cell containing 1. Then, to *clean* the contents of all the cells, we use the following trick with format cells: in custom number formatting we define the type: *;;;* (three semicolons). This will hide the contents of all the chessboard's cells.

Now we have a chessboard in cells A1:H8 as shown in the following screenshot:

	A B	C D	E	F	G H	I	J	K	L	М	Ν	0	Р	Q	R		S	Т	U
1 2		~		_			Conditi	ional Forr	natting	Rules Mar	nager								
3							Show fr	ormatting	rules fo	r. (7		1							
4			U				500010	Jinatting	Tures to	. Curre	nt Selec	tion	×						
5		~	n					New Rule		🔛 <u>E</u> dit	Rule		× <u>D</u> ele	te Rule		Dup	i <u>c</u> ate F	Rule	~
7							Rule (a	pplied in	order sl	hown)				Format			Ap	plies t	0
8					_									-					160
10							F	ormula: =/	A1=1								= 2	AS1:SP	158
11													Format C	ells					
12													Number	Alignment	Font	Border	Fill	Protection	1
13													Categor	r.					
14													General	^	Sample				
16													Account	ting	<u>T</u> ype:				
17													Time Percent	age	;;; hh:mm:ss				
18	Pha	ise 3	:										Fraction Scientif Text	ic	dd/mm/yy mm:ss mm:ss.0	y hh:mm			
19	<b>1) s</b>	elec	t ce	lls	<b>A1</b>	:H8							Custom		@ [h]:mm:ss	): : : *-#	##0 : 8*	@	
20	<b>2)</b> I	n Co	ond	iti	ona	l Fora	mtting	define	the f	ormula	1: =A	1=1			*###0	.00_;_@	#,##0.00	@??	_;_@_
21	3) I	n Ni	uml	bei	r Fo	ormatt	ing def	ine ;;;	(3 sei	nicolor	is)				[S-he-IL]de	ldd dd mr	nmm yyyy	::_;_@	·
22																			

Figure 3.50: Chessboard - step 3

# **Creating N-digit number with the same digit repeated N times**

The **SEQUENCE** function creates an array of 5 times the digit 5. The **CONCAT** function then combines all these 5 digits together and creates a 5-digit number as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 3.51: Creating N-digit number with the same digit repeated N times

# Conclusion

This chapter exemplified and demonstrated many use-cases where the **SEQUENCE** is applied in numeric operations or in generating numbers. One very interesting feature that we encountered in this chapter is the fact that this function can generate results even with a *virtual* array.

The next chapter will discuss the employment of **SEQUENCE** with arrays.

### Points to remember

- SEQUENCE is very useful in creating ascending or descending arrays of numbers, starting from any number with any increment (either positive or negative). If the increment is 0 (as, for example, in sub-section *Extract a number from the string's start Method 2*) the same digit/number is generated in the array.
- SEQUENCE can easily be applied to extract numbers or digits from a string.
- SEQUENCE combined with SUMPRODUCT, helps summing certain *chunks* of data, such as part of a list of numbers (for example: *SUM every Nth row, SUM the largest N numbers, SUM the smallest N numbers*)
- SEQUENCE combined with SUMPRODUCT, can imitate the MATCH function (for example: section *SUM SEQUNECE (virtual array)*)
- SEQUENCE can generate an array of alternate 0's and 1's (for example: section *Alternate 1s and 0s*)

#### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

https://discord.bpbonline.com



# Chapter 4 SEQUENCE in Arrays

### Introduction

As we already know, the SEQUENCE is one of the new Dynamic Array Functions of Excel 365. So, what would be more appropriate than demonstrating its seamless conjunction with arrays? An Excel array is a set of similar and related items arranged contiguously. Each item in the array can be accessed directly, by an index. That is why the SEQUENCE function is, so to speak, built-in to the very concept of arrays. Not only can it create an array, but it can also easily create a subset of an array which can hold one or more items.

In this chapter, we will display and explain the advantages of using the SEQUENCE function when arrays are the focus. The SEQUENCE function helps us generate arrays: unidimensional as well as bidimensional, dynamic arrays, flipped arrays (upside-down or "mirror"), etc.

### Structure

In this chapter, we will discuss the following topics:

- Examples of SEQUENCE with arrays
  - Creating an array of identical numbers Two methods
  - o Creating an array of ascending numbers Three methods

- From one cell to a vertical array
- How many active months
- o Build a dynamic array horizontal or vertical
- o Flip columns horizontally
- Flip vertical array (with and without SEQUENCE)
- o Flip part of vertical array using a parameter
- o Create a two-dimensional array using 4 parameters
- Flexible LARGE
- MMULT with static ranges and with dynamic Arrays
- Four useful tricks with VLOOKUP
- From vertical to horizontal Two Methods
- o Four two-dimensional arrays generated by two parameters
- Select columns by parameters
- o Transpose a vertical array without knowing its size beforehand
- Fetching multiple results for a search value
- Vertical to horizontal without TRANSPOSE

# Objectives

Upon concluding this chapter, you should be able to implement the **SEQUENCE** function when operating on arrays of data, either numeric or non-numeric. **SEQUENCE** is a good companion to many other useful functions. Applying it to those functions will enhance your versatility in Excel.

# **Examples of SEQUENCE with arrays**

As the chapter's name implies, we are going to exhibit the **SEQUENCE** function when employing array operations.

We will manifest some of the advantages of using **SEQUENCE** with arrays. For example, creating an array of identical numbers, creating an array of descending numbers, flipping/creating vertical arrays from horizontal arrays and vice versa, several methods for fetching specific data items from a **VLOOKUP** table, selecting specific columns from a data set, fetching multiple results for a search value and more.

### **Creating an array of identical numbers - Two methods**

We demonstrate here two methods to create an array of identical numbers. It is worth noting that using a parameter is always a preferred procedure. If you want to change the array's size, you will not have to *tamper with* the formula itself. Another point to be stressed is that in the second formula, we can omit the third argument (starting number), but we should explicitly indicate the fourth argument (step/increment) as 0, otherwise, the formula will use the default value (1) and the array created will not consist of identical members as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.1: Creating an Array of identical Numbers - Two Methods

# Creating an array of ascending numbers – three methods

As we all know, there is (almost) always more than one way to solve a problem in Excel. *Figure 4.2* exhibits three solutions for creating an array of ascending values:

• First, we have the older method before the Dynamic Array Functions. Here, we use the **ROW** function combined with **INDIRECT**. Although **INDIRECT** is a *volatile* function (which means that it recalculates every time a change is made to the workbook), the impact of a very small number of *volatile* functions is negligible.

- Secondly, we have a mixture of the **ROWS** function with the **INDIRECT**, wrapped with our function. The **ROWS** function returns the number of elements in the array (ROWS(1:7), which is 7. This number (7) is the argument to the **SEQUENCE** function which then generates a one-dimensional array of seven natural numbers, from 1 to 7.
- However, the shortest, most obvious solution is on the bottom left: **SEQUENCE** with only one argument, the parameter in L1 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.2: Creating an array of ascending numbers - 3 methods

#### From one cell to a vertical array

Here is an example of how to split a string into its components. We use a text function (**MID**) that separates the name to the characters composing it. The **SEQUENCE** function creates a vertical array of the components of the name in A1. The length of the array is, of course, identical to the original string's length as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.3: From one cell to a vertical array

#### How many active months

The challenge is this: We have a string of 12 pairs of numbers, each pair representing a month: the first – January, the second – February etc. If the pair's numeric value is greater than 0, it means that in the corresponding month some transactions were made, and we must count this month as a profitable month. The formula:

#### =SUM(IF(MID(A1,SEQUENCE(,12,1,2),2)\*1>0,1,0))

sums all these pairs to find out how many lucrative months we had in that year:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L
1	000230000409112030240205											
2												
3				=SUM	(IF(MID	(A1,SE	QUENC	E(,12,1	,2),2)*1>	>0,1,0))		
4												
5												
6			10									
7												
8												
9												
10		Calcul	ate the	numbe	r of act	ive mon	ths in t	he year	:			
11		This s	string i	s comj	posed o	of 12 pa	airs of	numb	ers.			
12		Each	pair re	prese	nts the	index	month	:				
13		first p	oair = J	l <mark>anua</mark> r	y, next	t pair =	= Febr	uary et	t <b>c.</b>			
14		if a pa	air's nu	ımeric	value	is grea	ter tha	an 1, w	e add	one.		
15		Else -	we ad	d noth	ing							
16												
17												

Figure 4.4: How many active months

#### Build a dynamic array - horizontal or vertical

The formula in the following figure implements four elements:

- Whether we want a horizontal or vertical array. If cell B1 is "R", then we want a vertical array (by Row), otherwise we want a horizontal array.
- Cell D1 stores the array's size: how many rows (if it is a vertical array) or columns (if it is a horizontal array).
- Cell F1 sets the starting value.
- Cell H1 determines the step/increment. It is 1 by default, so we can omit it if we want an increment of 1 between the array's members:

	А	в	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	Μ	Ν	0
1	Rows/cols	R	Len	20	Start	1000	Incr.	1							
2															
3			1000												
4			1001												
5			1002												
6			1003												
7			1004												
8			1005												
9			1006												
10			1007		=IF(B)	<mark>l="R",</mark> §	<b>SEQUE</b>	NCE(D	1,,F1),S	EQUE	NCE(,I	D1,F1))			
11			1008												
12			1009												
13			1010												
14			1011												
15			1012			Dynan	nic Arr	ay:							
16			1013			IF B1=	="R" ->	> Verti	cal (by	Row)					
17			1014			Otherv	vise ->	Horizo	ntal (b	y <mark>C</mark> olu	( <b>mn</b> )				
18			1015			IF the	increm	ient is 1	1, we ca	an skij	o the f	o <mark>urth</mark> p	arama	ater	
19			1016												
20			1017												
21			1018												
22			1019												

Figure 4.5: Build a dynamic array - Horizontal or Vertical

### Flip columns horizontally

This section will display two methods to flip columns horizontally: the first one uses a dynamic range (a parameter) whereas the second one uses *hard coded* references. Both examples use advanced DAF, as explained in *Chapter 1*, *Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*.

#### Method 1

The parameter (in K1) specifies the range to be flipped where we are using **INDIRECT**. This function *translates* the text in K1 into a valid reference in Excel. As explained above, it is not recommended to use many instances of the **INDIRECT** function in the

worksheet (see the section: *Creating an array of ascending numbers - three methods*), but here we use it only once to establish the size of the array to flip. The **SORTBY** function sorts the columns to flip (determined by the **SEQUENCE**) in descending order (its last argument is: -1) and the result: a *mirrored* array is shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.6: Flip Columns horizontally – Method 1

#### Method 2

Using the new DAF function **CHOOSECOLS** with our **SEQUENCE**, yields the desired *mirror* array. The **COLUMNS** function (appearing twice within the **SEQUENCE** function) returns both the number of columns to flip (3) and the column to start with. As in the previous example, the last argument to the **CHOOSECOLS** is negative to indicate the reverse order of columns in the resulting array. This is shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I
1	Country	Capital	Country Code		Country Code	Capital	Country		
2	Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG		A₽G	Kabul	Afghanistan		
3	Albania	Tirana	ALB		LB	Tirana	Albania		
4	Algeria	Algiers	DZA		DZA	Algiers	Algeria		
5	American Samoa	Pago Pago	ASM		ASM	Pago Pago	American Samoa		
6	Andorra	Andorra la Vella	AND		AND	Andorra la Vella	Andorra		
7	Angola	Luanda	AGO		AGO	Luanda	Angola		
8	Anguilla	The Valley	AIA		AIA	The Valley	Anguilla		
9	Antigua and Barbuda	St. John's	ATG		ATG	St. John's	Antigua and Barbuda		
10	Argentina	Buenos Aires	ARG	/	ARG	Buenos Aires	Argentina		
11	Armenia	Yerevan	ARM	/	ARM	Yerevan	Armenia		
12	Aruba	Oranjestad	ABW	/	ABW	Oranjestad	Aruba		
13	Australia	Canberra	AUS		AUS	Canberra	Australia		
14	Austria	Vienna	AUT		AUT	Vienna	Austria		
15	Azerbaijan	Baku	AZE		AZE	Baku	Azerbaijan		
16									
17			/						
18			=CHOOSECO	LS(A1:C	15,SEQUENCE(,	COLUMNS(A1:C1	5),COLUMNS(A1:C15	),-1))	
19									
20		CHOOSECOI	<mark>.S</mark> in unison wit	h SEQU	JENCE				
21		return a revers	e ("mirror") ar	ray					
22									
23									

Figure 4.7: Flip columns horizontally – Method 2

# Flip vertical array (with and without SEQUENCE)

The following figure shows two methods of flipping a vertical array *upside down*. On the right-hand side, we have a solution that uses the **OFFSET** function in tandem with the **COUNTA** function. This, of course, is not a dynamic solution. We need to drag the formula all the way down to row 13, the last row of the array. The solution suggested on the left-hand side is, of course, a dynamic solution that turns the array topsy-turvy in one go:



Figure 4.8: Flip vertical array (with and without SEQUENCE)

#### Flip part of vertical array using a parameter

The parameter (in I1) enables us to choose only part of the array to be flipped without *hard-coding* the range within the formula. This example is similar to the previous one, however the preceding figure (*Figure 4.8*) suggests flipping the whole array. The current example flips only a part of the array. This is done with the **INDIRECT** function. By using the **LET** function (which enables us to define variables of the formula) we can significantly shorten the original formula as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.9: Flip part of vertical array using a Parameter

# Create a two-dimensional array using four parameters

The following screenshot demonstrates creating a two-dimensional array. The number of rows is set dynamically: we divide the total number of items in the array (parameter in cell I1) by the desired number of columns (parameter in cell R1). The starting number is defined in cell L1, and the solution is flexible enough to allow us an array with increments greater than 1 or even smaller than 1 (a descending array). The increment is defined in cell O1:



Figure 4.10: Create a two-dimensional array using four parameters

### Flexible LARGE

The parameter in H1 defines the number of agents to display. This number is in fact the second argument of the **LARGE** function. It lets us create a dynamic header of the report (in cell D2) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.11: Flexible LARGE

# MMULT with static ranges and with dynamic Arrays

The **MMULT** function returns the result of multiplication of two arrays. On the lefthand side formula, we use multiplication of ranges whereas on the right-hand side formula we multiply arrays. In the right-hand side formula, we need to specify explicitly all four arguments of the second **SEQUENCE** function: we need to know not only the size of the rectangular array (3 rows by three columns) but also its starting number (9) and its step/increment (-1) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.12: MMULT with static ranges and with dynamic arrays

### Four useful tricks with VLOOKUP

When used with **VLOOKUP**, **SEQUENCE** can return multiple results in various forms. In the next four examples we present four such cases: fetching all columns for the search key, fetching all columns in reverse order, fetching data from the last two (out of the three) columns and finally, fetching data from the first and last (third) columns.

#### VLOOKUP - Fetch all columns of an item searched

The following figure demonstrates how to fetch all columns of a searched item. The second argument to the **SEQUENCE** function specifies the number of columns to be returned by the **VLOOKUP** function for the item specified in cell G1:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н
1						Param	111	
2	Code	Tariff	Service					
3	111	1920.00	Morning					
4	112	1680.00	Noon					
5	113	2150.00	Evening					
6	114	2640.00	Premium					
7	115	1550.00	Youth					
8	116	1650.00	Student					
9	117	3350.00	Couple					
10	118	4250.00	Family					
11								
12	111	1920	Morning					
13	1							
14								
15								
16	=VLOOKUP	<mark>P(G1,\$A\$3:\$C</mark>	\$10,SEQUE	ENCE(,	3),0)			
17								
18								
19		Fetch all dat	ta per look	up key	r i i			
20								

Figure 4.13: VLOOKUP - Fetch all columns of item searched

# VLOOKUP - Fetch all data per lookup key in reverse order

In the following example, **SEQUENCE** *tells* **VLOOKUP** to return backwards the data found for the search key (parameter in cell G1): fetch three columns (second

argument) starting from the third column (third argument) in reverse order (fourth argument):

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	Ι	J
1						Param	115			
2	Code	Tariff	Service							
3	111	1920.00	Morning							
4	112	1680.00	Noon							
5	113	2150.00	Evening							
6	114	2640.00	Premium							
7	115	1550.00	Youth		Youth	1550	115			
8	116	1650.00	Student		1					
9	117	3350.00	Couple							
10	118	4250.00	Family							
11										
12			=VLOOKU	J <mark>P(G1,\$A</mark> §	\$ <mark>3:\$C\$10</mark> ,	SEQUENCE	(,3,3,-1)	,0)		
13										
14										
15										
16										
17		Fetch all da	ta per lool	kup key i	n reverse	order				
18										

Figure 4.14: VLOLKUP - Fetch all data per lookup key in reverse order

#### VLOOKUP - Fetch last two columns for a search key

The following screenshot illustrates how to fetch the last two columns for the key defined in cell G1: start from the second column (SEQUENCE's argument number 2) and get two columns (argument number 3):

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J
1						Param	115			
2	Code	Tariff	Service							
3	111	1920.00	Morning							
4	112	1680.00	Noon							
5	113	2150.00	Evening							
6	114	2640.00	Premium							
7	115	1550.00	Youth		1550	Youth				
8	116	1650.00	Student		1					
9	117	3350.00	Couple							
10	118	4250.00	Family							
11										
12			=VLOOKU	J <mark>P(G1,\$A\$</mark>	<mark>3:\$C\$10</mark> ,	SEQUENCE	E(,2,2),0)			
13										
14										
15										
16		Fetch last t	wo column	s per lool	kup key					
17										

Figure 4.15: VLOOKUP - Fetch last two columns for a search key

# VLOOKUP - Fetch the first and third data items per lookup key

The following screenshot depicts a case where we fetch only the first and third columns of the data items for the key in cell G1. **VLOOKUP**'s second argument (table array defined in the **SEQUENCE** function) returns two columns, starting with the first table's array column and skipping the second column (**SEQUENCE**'s last argument is: 2, which means: *Step 2* columns):

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Η	Ι	J	K	L
1						Param	111					
2	Code	Tariff	Service									
3	111	1920.00	Morning		111	Morning						
4	112	1680.00	Noon		1							
5	113	2150.00	Evening									
6	114	2640.00	Premium									
7	115	1550.00	Youth		=VLOO	<mark>)KUP(G1,\$</mark> A	<b>\\$3:\$C</b>	\$10,SEÇ	<b>UENC</b>	E(,2,1,	2),0)	
8	116	1650.00	Student									
9	117	3350.00	Couple									
10	118	4250.00	Family									
11												
12												
13												
14												
15		Fetch the 1s	st and 3rd	data ite	ms per	lookup key						
16												
17												

Figure 4.16: VLOOKUP - Fetch the first and third data items per lookup key

#### From vertical to horizontal – Two Methods

The challenge here is to convert data in one column (where there are gaps between the contiguous *chunks* of data) into a two-column array (in the first example) or three-column array (in the second example).

#### Method 1

The first method first filters all the data (non-empty) cells, while the **SEQUENCE** function sets an array of three rows and two columns, to host the data filtered: 6 data rows divided into two columns, as shown in the following screenshot. The

**LET** function allows you to assign a name to a variable. In our example, the r is a substitute (shorthand) to the expression B2:B9 (in our case, the range: B2:B9):

	A	В	С	D	E	F	G
1		Before				After	
2		Abraham Lincoln			Abraham Lincoln	February 12, 1809 – April 15, 1865	
3		February 12, 1809 – April 15, 1865		1	John Fitzgerald Kennedy	May 29, 1917 - November 22, 1963	
4					Franklin Delano Roosevelt	January 30, 1882 – April 12, 1945	
5		John Fitzgerald Kennedy					
6		May 29, 1917 – November 22, 1963					
7							
8		Franklin Delano Roosevelt		=LET(r,B2	2:B9,INDEX(FILTER(r,r<>"")	SEQUENCE(COUNTA(r)/2,2),1))	
9		January 30, 1882 – April 12, 1945					
10							
11							
12							
13							
14	Fr	om vertical to horizontal.					
15	E	ich two rows are joined into o	ne	row in tw	o columns		
16							
17							

Figure 4.17: From vertical to horizontal - Method 1

#### Method 2

The second method splits the data in column A (rows 2-17) into a two-dimensional 4\*4 array. This array is then *cleaned* of its 4th rows (which are empty) and the resulting array consists of 4 names in three columns. Again, we use here (as in our previous sub-section) the **LET** function to define a "shorthand" for a lengthy expression: **INDEX(A:A,SEQUENCE(16/4,4,2))**.

The **SEQUENCE** function defines a bi-dimensional array: 4 rows (there are 16 rows in the range (2:17) for each person, and we want to *transpose* each such 4 rows into 4 columns. Since the **INDEX** function returns 0 for an empty cell (each fourth row becomes the fourth column), we then remove these zeroes with the **IF** function. The result (on the right-hand side of the picture) displays three data items per person in each row:



Figure 4.18: From vertical to horizontal - Method 2

# Four two-dimensional arrays generated by two parameters

The two parameters in L1 and L2, enable us to generate four different kinds of arrays.

The two arrays on the left-hand side consist of a 2-row by 6-column array and a 6-row by 2-column array. The two arrays on the right-hand side are in fact the swapping of each dimension of their respective array on the left: the array in P2:Q8 manifests the shift from 2 rows by 6 columns into 6 rows by two columns, and the array in P11:U12 shows the shift from 6 rows by two columns into 6 columns by two rows.

You need to pay heed to the special notation of a spilled array in the formula in P2 and P11: the # sign following the cells address (B2), denotes a spilled array which starts at B2 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.19: Four two-dimensional arrays generated by two parameters

#### Select columns by parameters

The **CHOOSECOLS** function (mentioned and explained in *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*) enables us to choose certain columns from an array. In this case, we want to select the last two columns (third and fourth) of the original array. The parameters in L3 and L4 (which are data validation lists whose values are 1-4) determine respectively the numbers of columns to display and the starting column number. The **IF** function within the **SEQUENCE** verifies that no error is produced when selecting incompatible values from the parameters as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М
1	Country	Capital	<b>Country Code</b>	Continent									
2	Afghanistan	Kabul	AFG	Asia		Kabul	AFG	Asia					
3	Albania	Tirana	ALB	Europe		Tijana	ALB	Europe			no.of col.	3	×
4	Algeria	Algiers	DZA	Africa		Algiers	DZA	Africa			from col.	2	
5	American Samoa	Pago Pago	ASM	America		Pago Pago	ASM	America					
6	Andorra	Andorra la Vella	AND	Europe	1	Andorra la Vella	AND	Europe					
7	Angola	Luanda	AGO	Africa	1	Luanda	AGO	Africa					
8	Anguilla	The Valley	AIA	America	/	The Valley	AIA	America					
9	Antigua and Barbuda	St. John's	ATG	America		St. John's	ATG	America					
10	Argentina	Buenos Aires	ARG	America		Buenos Aires	ARG	America					
11	Armenia	Yerevan	ARM	Asia		Yerevan	ARM	Asia					
12	Aruba	Oranjestad	ABW	America		Oranjestad	ABW	America					
13	Australia	Canberra	AUS	Australia		Canberra	AUS	Australia					
14	Austria	Vienna	AUT	Europe		Vienna	AUT	Europe					
15	Azerbaijan	Baku	AZE	Asia		Baku	AZE	Asia					
16				1									
17			=CHOOSECO	LS(A2:D15	,SE	QUENCE(,L3,IF	(L4+L3	>5,(5-L3),I	L <b>4)))</b>				
18													
19		D ( 1	6			<u> </u>							
20		Return columns	from an array										
21		as well as the st	arting column,										
22		in two data vali	dation cells: L.	3 & L4									
23													

Figure 4.20: Select columns by parameters

# Transpose a vertical array without knowing its size beforehand

If we do not know in advance the size of the source array, but know where it starts, then the **COUNTA** function (the second argument: number of columns which should be equal to the number of rows in the original array) will help up set up the size of the output array as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 4.21: Transpose a vertical array without knowing its size beforehand

#### Fetching multiple results for a search value

How do we fetch multiple results for a certain agent who has multiple records in the input array?

First, we create a unique list of agents (in cells J2:J7). Then, we can select the agent from the drop-down list of the data validation of cell F2. The **INDEX** conjoined with the **SEQUENCE** delivers some empty non-valid values which are eliminated from the list with the assistance of the **TOCOL** function as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	н	I	J	K	L	Μ	Ν	0
1 Ag	ent	Bonus				Agent	List of Bonuses								
2 Yos	ssi	2000				Yossi	2000			Eli					
3 Eli		3000					500			Galit 🔪					
4 Sar	it	4000					700			Inbar					
5 Yos	ssi	500					/			Sandra					
6 Gal	it	6000								Sarit					
7 Inb	ar	7000								Yossi					
8 San	ıdra	8000													
9 Gal	it	600				/					=SOR1	(UNIQ	UE(A2:	(12))	
10 Yos	ssi	700													
11 Eli		500													
12 Gal	it	100			- /										
13				=TOC	OL(IN	DEX(B2:	:B12,(IF(F2=A2:A12,	SEQUEN	CE(COU	NTA(B	2:B12)	),""))),	3)		
14					<u> </u>					<u> </u>			,		
15															
16		<b>Fetching multi</b>	ple re	sults fo	r a sea	arch val	ue.								
17		The unique ag	ent is :	selecte	d via a	dropdo	wn list (Cell F2).								
18		The data valid	ation	source	(list of	funique	agents)								
10		is the array cre	atod i	n 12.1	8	anque	ngento)								
20		is the array cre		<b>H 52.5</b>	0										

Figure 4.22: Fetching multiple results for a search value

### Vertical to horizontal without TRANSPOSE

The vertical array of months (A2:A13) is converted into a horizontal array. The **SEQUENCE** function yields a 12-item horizontal array which is *populated* by the **INDEX** function as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	в	С	D	E	F	G	н	I	J	к	L	м	N	0
1	Months		January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December	
2	January														
3	February														
-4	March														
5	April														
6	May														
7	June														
8	July														
9	August		=INDEX(A2:A13,SEQUENCE(,COUNTA(A2:A13),1))												
10	September														
11	October														
12	November														
13	December														
14															
15			Vertical to horizontal - without TRANSPOSE												
16															
17															
18															

Figure 4.23: Vertical to horizontal without TRANSPOSE

# Conclusion

In this chapter we referred to cases where the **SEQUENCE** can be easily used when dealing with arrays. Since **SEQUENCE** is a Dynamic Array Function (see explanation in *Chapter 1, Introduction to Dynamic Array Functions in Excel 365*) it is clear that this chapter perfectly illustrates its role as an array formula.

The next chapter will explain in detail the **SEQUENCE** function in the context of dates and times.

### Points to remember

- SEQUENCE adapts itself flawlessly to working with arrays.
- SEQUENCE can build arrays on the fly, either horizontally or vertically.
- SEQUENCE easily generates one- or bi-dimensional arrays.
- SEQUENCE can return multiple results in various forms if you use it with VLOOKUP.

#### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

#### https://discord.bpbonline.com



# CHAPTER 5 SEQUENCE in Date and Time Operations

### Introduction

Excel is indispensable when dealing with time operations. It helps us calculate periods of time (seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, months and years). We use time in calendars, for scheduling, measuring duration of an activity, calculations involving timespan and of course in myriad of other cases and scenarios. This chapter will focus on all these features. It is my opinion that when it comes to dealing with dates and times in Excel, there is no function as advantageous as **SEQUENCE**. Multiple examples in this chapter will exemplify **SEQUENCE**'s versatility and its ease of use in this context. We will demonstrate (among other things) not only how to calculate durations of time, set schedules, and so on, but also how to build dynamic and flexible monthly and yearly calendars.

### Structure

In this chapter, we will discuss the following topics:

- Examples of **SEQUENCE** with date and time
  - o 12 months with each month's first day
  - $\circ$   $\;$  The year's months with the last day of each month three methods  $\;$
  - N consecutive dates starting from today (two methods)

- o Display month names without a specific date
- 2 Methods to display the weekday names
- o Adding minutes to time
- o Adding seconds to time
- **SEQUENCE** of days in a given month
- A **SEQUENCE** of dates (between start and end dates)
- Extract only time four traditional methods
- Extract only time a new method
- Presence in class by month
- How many Mondays are there in a given month
- o How many Saturdays between two dates
- Display only dates of Wednesdays in 2020
- How many Wednesdays are there in 2020
- **SEQUENCE** of the month's last date for each month (two methods)
- A horizontal SEQUENCE of descending dates: first of each month
- o A substitute for NETWORKDAYS.INTL (for a certain month)
- A substitute to the NETWORKDAYS.INTL (any period)
- A substitute to NETWORKDAYS.INTL with/without weekends
- o How many working days are there in each month of a given period
- How many eligibilities days
- The doctor's schedule (2 versions)
- The doctor's schedule (version 1)
- The doctor's schedule (version 2)
- Monthly calendar classic vs. non-classic
- o Monthly calendar in 20 languages
- o Two methods for creating a list of the month's days
- Yearly calendar good vs. bad
- Dynamic yearly calendar in one formula
- o Dynamic yearly calendar Conditional Formatting
- o Dynamic yearly calendar by month
- Dynamic yearly calendar by week
- Yearly horizontal calendar with highlighted weekday (two examples)

- o Yearly horizontal calendar
- Yearly vertical calendar with highlighted weekday (two examples)
- o Conditional Formatting each weekday is formatted differently

# Objectives

If you read this chapter thoroughly and exercise the examples given in it, you will be able to implement the **SEQUENCE** function in a huge range of related situations and problems.

# Examples of SEQUENCE with date and time

The **SEQUENCE** function can be of great assistance when applied to date and time. We are going to exhibit its abilities in this territory, from the tiniest (second) to the immense (year).

### 12 months with each month's first day

This simple formula displays the dates of the first of each month for the year 2021. Of course, the Year argument is superfluous, but did you know that if you omit it, you will get the list of months for the year 1900? (which in Excel is Year 0). This is illustrated in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н
1	01/01/2021			Year	2021			
2	01/02/2021							
3	01/03/2021							
4	01/04/2021							
5	01/05/2021		=DATE(E1,SEQUENCE(12),1)					
6	01/06/2021							
7	01/07/2021							
8	01/08/2021							
9	01/09/2021							
10	01/10/2021							
11	01/11/2021							
12	01/12/2021							
13								
14								
			Sequence of the year's dates of each					
15			FIRST day of the month					
16								
17								
18								

Figure 5.1: Sequence of the year's 12 months: each with the month's first day

# The year's months with the last day of each month - three methods

There are three methods mentioned in this section that will show you how to create an array of the year's months, with each month's last day. In this section, we will learn how tio display the last date of each month of the year.

#### Method 1

The first method uses a trick by which you do not need to specify the last argument of the **DATE** function (that is, the DAY): If the month's number is current+1 (for example, 2 for January 3 for February, and so on) then the formula automatically generates the last day of the month. You can omit the DAY argument as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.2: Display the last date of each month of the year – method 1

#### Method 2

The second method uses the following trick: the **SEQUENCE(12,0)** generates the array: 0,1,2...,11. So, the dates array created by the **DATE** function is the following: 01/12/2019, 01/01/2020, ...,01/11/2020. Now, adding 1 month (last argument of the **EOMONTH** function) creates the desired array as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.3: Display the last date of each month of the year – method 2

#### Method 3

This method is a little simpler than the previous one, yet it uses the same functions to generate the sought-after result. Here, the **DATE** function yields the first dates of each month in 2020. The second argument of the **EOMONTH (0)**, *converts* the date into the month's last date as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.4: Display the last date of each month of the year – method 3

# N consecutive dates starting from today (two methods)

#### Method 1

**SEQUENCE**'s first parameter is the number of days (taken from the parameter in cell **G1**). **SEQUENCE**'s last parameter (value to start with) is today.

One can, of course, start with any date. In such a case, we would add the starting date as an additional parameter as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I		
1	21/02/2023					Param	20				
2	22/02/2023										
3	23/02/2023			Method	1						
4	24/02/2023										
5	25/02/2023										
6	26/02/2023		=SEQ	UENCE	(G1,,T	ODAY(	))				
7	27/02/2023										
8	28/02/2023										
9	01/03/2023										
10	02/03/2023										
11	03/03/2023										
12	04/03/2023										
13	05/03/2023										
14	06/03/2023										
15	07/03/2023										
16	08/03/2023										
17	09/03/2023										
18	10/03/2023										
19	11/03/2023			Metho	d 1						
20	12/03/2023		Sequence of N consecutive dates								
21			startii	ıg fron							
22											
23											

Figure 5.5: N consecutive dates starting from today – method 1

#### Method 2

In this example, the starting date (Today) is not an argument to the **SEQUENCE** function. It is the *starting point* from which we add the **SEQUENCE** of days, according to the parameter in G1 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.6: N consecutive dates starting from today – method 2

#### Display month names without a specific date

The formula in *Figure 5.7* does not need a date to display the months names, nor does it need any other function. The **DATE** function uses the same trick as in *Figure 5.2*: if the month is current+1, it automatically generates the month's last date (so we do not need the **DAY** argument of the **DATE** function). Moreover, we can omit **DATE**'s first argument (**YEAR**) and excel interprets the missing argument as 0: year 0 in Excel in 1900, so we have created a *legal* date that Excel can *understand*. The **DATE** function then generates a sequence of numbers which are the cumulative days for each month from the beginning of the year. If you wonder why **b1** is the prefix of the **TEXT**'s second argument: Since my Windows default language is not English, if I omitted the **b1** and specified only **mmm**, Excel would display the result in my native language. To have the month names in

English this is the shortest method. Of course, if your Windows' default language is English, then the **b1** prefix is redundant as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.7: Display month names without a specified date

### Two methods to display the weekday names

The **TEXT** function transforms an array of seven numbers into weekday names. Please refer to the previous section, *Display month names without a specific date* for an explanation of the **b1** prefix of **TEXT**'s second argument as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.8: Two methods to display the weekday names
#### Adding minutes to time

The formula builds a dynamic array of time gaps within an hour. The time gap is given as a parameter in cell H1. The parameter for the starting hour is defined in cell E1. The size of the array is determined by the gap size. For example, if it is 4, then there are: 60/4 = 15 gaps as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.9: Adding minutes to time

#### Adding seconds to time

In the following example we will create a time gap in seconds. The gap size is given as a parameter in cell H1. The parameter for the starting hour is defined in cell E1, and the size of the array is set in cell K1 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.10: Adding seconds to time

#### Sequence of days in a given month

In this section, we will learn how to create the array of days in a given month (cell I2) and year (cell I1). Here, we will again use the *trick* of omitting the **DAY** argument from the **DATE** function (see preceding section: *Display month names without a specific date*) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.11: SEQUENCE of days in a given month

## A SEQUENCE of dates (between start and end dates)

In this section we will generate an array of dates where only the start date (cell C1) and the end date (cell C2) are known. The sequence is not limited to the scope of only one month. It can span over more than one month as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	Κ	L	Μ
1		start date	21/01/2021		21/01/2021								
2		end date	02/02/2021		22/01/2021	\							
3					23/01/2021	$\backslash$							
4					24/01/2021								
5					25/01/2021								
6					26/01/2021		=SEQU	JENCE(	C2+1-C	C1,,C1,1)			
7					27/01/2021								
8					28/01/2021								
9					29/01/2021								
10					30/01/2021								
11					31/01/2021								
12					01/02/2021								
13					02/02/2021								
14													
15													
16		Create a	sequence of	dates	where only								
17		the first d	late (C1) an	d last	date (C2) ar	e giver	n						
18													
19													

Figure 5.12: A Sequence of dates (between start and end date)

#### Extract only time -four traditional methods

Here are four traditional procedures to extract only the time from cells holding both dates and times:

- The first one (in cell C2) is using Excel's **TIME** function.
- The second one (cell C7) extracts the time (which is a fraction) by using the **MOD** function.
- The third method subtracts the **INT** (integer), which is the date portion of cell A12.
- And the fourth one uses the **TRUNC** function (which removes the fractional part of the number in C17, so that after the subtraction we are left with the fraction

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	Ν
1	Date and Time		Only Time											
2	20/11/2022 14:45		14:45			Method	11							
3														
4			=TIME(HOUR(A	2),MIN	UTE(A	2),)								
5														
6	Date and Time		Only Time											
7	20/11/2022 14:45		14:45			Method	12							
8														
9			=MOD(A7,1)											
10														
11	Date and Time		Only Time											
12	20/11/2022 14:45		14:45			Method	13							
13			<u> </u>											
14			=A12-INT(A12)											
15														
16	Date and Time		Only Time											
17	20/11/2022 14:45		14:45			Method	14							
18			<u> </u>											
19			=A17-TRUNC(A1	7)										
20														
21									0			0		
22		4 trac	litional ways to	extrac	ct only	the tin	ne fron	ı a cell	forma	itted a	s Date	& Tim	le	
23														
24														

All four methods are shown in the following screenshot:

*Figure 5.13*: *Extract only time – four traditional methods* 

#### Extract only time – a new method

In addition to the four known techniques to draw out the time part of a Date and Time cell, here is another method using **SEQUENCE**. First, it locates the "." (the separator denoting the decimal place). Then, it retrieves the decimal part and converts it from a string to a number. Since the cell holding the result is formatted as "hh:mm" the result appears as an hour as shown in the following screenshot:



*Figure 5.14*: *Extract only time – a new method* 

#### Presence in class by month

The following figure exemplifies the use of the **FREQUENCY** function concomitantly with our **SEQUENCE**. It shows the number of times the student showed up during the Academic year, month by month. Please note that the list of dates need not be sorted, as it is done automatically by the **FREQUENCY** function as shown in the following screenshot:

A	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	Μ	Ν	0
1	Dates when present			Frequency	Month									
2	01/07/2022			0	January									
3	02/07/2022		1	0	February									
4	04/07/2022			0	March									
5	02/04/2022			2	April									
6	03/04/2022			0	May									
7	09/07/2022			1	June		=TEX1	(DATE	<mark>(,SEQ</mark> U	ENCE(	12,,2),),'	'b1mm	nm")	
8	06/06/2022			5	July									
9	12/07/2022			5	August									
10	12/08/2022			4	September									
11	14/08/2022			4	October									
12	15/08/2022			0	November									
13	16/08/2022			0	December									
14	20/08/2022			0										
15	27/09/2022		/											
16	28/09/2022		=FREQUENCY(MON)	TH(B2:B22)	SEQUENC	E(12))								
17	29/09/2022													
18	30/09/2022													
19	01/10/2022													
20	02/10/2022													
21	03/10/2022		How many times di	id the stud	ent show <b>1</b>	ıp duri	ng the	year i	n each	mont	1?			
22	06/10/2022		Please note that the	e presence	dates need	l not be	e arrai	iged						

Figure 5.15: Presence in class by month

#### How many Mondays are there in a given month

In this section, we will learn to calculate the number of Mondays in a given month.

The formula receives two arguments:

- The desired month
- The wanted weekday

How many Mondays (parameter in cell B2) were there in January 2022 (cell A2). You are free to choose any month or weekday, according to your needs as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	М	Ν
1	Date	Day of Week												
2	01/01/2000	2												
3														
4														
5			5											
6														
7														
8														
9														
10		=LET(m.SE	OUENC	E(EON	ONTHO	42 M-A2	+1) A2	1).COUN	TTTTT	ER(m.W	EEKDA	V(m)=B	2)))	
11								.,,					-///	
12														
13														
14														
15				How m	any Mo	ndays (p	oaramet	er in <mark>B2</mark>	)					
16				were th	ere in J	anuary (	2000 (Pa	aramete	r in <mark>A2</mark> )	).				
17				You ca	n choose	e, of cou	rse, any	year or	<sup>.</sup> any mo	onth				
18														
19														
20														
21														

Figure 5.16: How many Mondays are there in a given month

#### How many Saturdays between two dates?

In this section we will read about two methods that will help us find how many Saturdays there are between two days:

#### Method 1

This example illustrates Saturday (weekday is a parameter defined in cell G2). The parameters for the start date and the end date are in cells E2 and F2, respectively. These, of course, can be modified for any other period or any other weekday. Besides, the **SUM** function used in this example can be perfectly replaced by the **SUMPRODUCT** function:

	Α	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	Κ	L	М	Ν	0
1					start date	end date	weekday								
2					01/10/2022	22/10/2022		7	Sat						
3															
4								=TEX	(T(G2,'	b1ddd"	)				
5	4														
6					Method 1										
7															
8			=IFI	RR	OR(SUM((V	VEEKDAY(	SEQUENC	E(\$F\$2	- <b>SE\$2</b> +	1,, <b>\$E\$2</b> )	=\$G\$2	)*1),"")			
9															
10															
11															
12															
13															
14			Hov	v m	any Satur	days betw	een two d	lates? (	Metho	od 1)					
15			The	we	ekday par	ameter is	defined in	n G2.		, i					
16			The	sta	rt date an	d the end	date are	defined	l in E2	& F2,	respe	ctively			
17			The	SU	M functio	n can be	replaced l	oy the	SUMP	RODU	ICT				
18			whi	ch v	vill yield t	he same r	esult :-)								
19															

Figure 5.17: How many Saturdays in a given period – method 1

#### Method 2

Another procedure to achieve the same goal: find how many Saturdays there are in a certain period of dates.

The method exhibited here is quite similar to the one described in the preceding section: *How many Mondays are there in a given month* as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.18: How many Saturdays in a given period – method 2

#### Display only dates of Wednesdays in 2020

In this example we want to find out all the dates of Wednesdays in the year 2020. The first part of the formula determines whether the parameter year (in cell G2) is a leap year. The second parameter filters out all the Wednesdays (parameter in cell H2) as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	в	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	м	Ν	0	Р	Q
1	01/01/2020						Year	Weekday									
2	08/01/2020	(					2020	4									
3	15/01/2020	$\mathbf{X}$															
4	22/01/2020		=LET(y,	SEQUE	ENCE(II	F(INT(	<mark></mark>	-G2,366,36	5),,DAT	E(G2,1	,1)),FIL	TER(y,	WEEK	DAY(y)=H2))			
5	29/01/2020																
6	05/02/2020															2020 Cale	endar
7	12/02/2020											J.	anuary 2020	February 2020	March 2020		pril 2020
8	19/02/2020											5 M T W	2 3 4	S M T W Th F S	S         M         T         W         Th         F         S           1         2         3         4         5         6         7	5 M T W T 1 2	3 4
9	26/02/2020											5 6 7 8 12 13 14 15 19 20 21 22	9 10 11 5 16 17 18 2 23 24 25	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28	5 6 7 8 9 12 13 14 15 14 19 20 21 22 21	10 11 i 17 18 3 24 25
10	04/03/2020											26 27 28 25	9 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29	29 30 31	26 27 28 29 3	2
11	11/03/2020												May 2020	June 2020	July 2020	Aug	ust 2020
12	18/03/2020											<u>SMTW</u>	1 2	<u>5 M T W Th F S</u> 1 2 3 4 5 6	5 M T W Th F S	<u>SMTW1</u>	1 F S
13	25/03/2020											10 11 12 13 17 18 19 20	14 15 16 21 22 23	14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27	12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25	9 10 11 12 12 16 17 18 19 21	1 14 15 0 21 22
14	01/04/2020											24 25 26 27 31	7 28 29 30	28 29 30	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 2 30 31	28 29
15	08/04/2020											Sept	ember 2020	October 2020	November 2020	Decem	ber 2020
16	15/04/2020			Displa	av only	the d	ates of	Wednesd	lavs in	2020		6 7 8 9	3 4 5 10 11 12	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14	1 2 3	4 5
17	22/04/2020								~			13 14 15 10 20 21 22 21 27 28 29 30	5 17 18 19 1 24 25 26	11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31	15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30	13 14 15 16 12 20 21 22 23 2 27 28 29 30 3	18 19 1 25 26 1
18	29/04/2020																
19	06/05/2020													www.blank-	alerdar.com		
20	13/05/2020											L					

(Calendar image by: www.blank-calendar.com):

Figure 5.19: Display only dates of Wednesdays in 2020

#### How many Wednesdays are there in 2020?

In this section we will find the number of Wednesdays (parameter in cell H2) in the year 2020 (parameter in cell G2). The procedure to determine whether this is a leap year is slightly different from the one used in the previous section: *Display only dates of Wednesday in 2020* as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.20: How many Wednesdays are there in 2020

# Sequence of the month's last date for each month (two methods)

#### Method 1

The formula in this example uses the same trick as already shown in the preceding section: *The year's months with the last day of each month - three methods (method 1)*, if the month argument to the **DATE** function is current+1, then we can skip the **Day** argument, because the **DATE** function calculates the last day of the current month. **SEQUENCE**'s last argument is 0, so we start with the second month (2+0). Since the **Day** argument is missing, we get the date of January's last day as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.21: Sequence of the month's last date for each month (method 1)

#### Method 2

A similar approach to the one demonstrated in the previous subsection (as can be seen in *Figure 5.21*), but here, **SEQUENCE**'s last argument is not 0 but 1 (not explicitly specified) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.22: Sequence of the month's last date for each month (method 2)

#### A horizontal SEQUENCE of descending dates -First of each month

In this section, we will discuss the sequence of descending dates starting from 01/06/2020 (parameter defined in cell H2). The size of the sequence (six consecutive months) is set in cell I2. The minus sign preceding the **SEQUENCE** function *forces* the formula to generate a sequence of numbers in descending order starting with 0. Then, the **EDATE** adds this sequence to the starting date thus creating a sequence of dates in descending order.

To create a vertical sequence, all you have to do is switch places between **SEQUENCE**'s first two arguments:

SEQUENCE(,\$I\$2,0) instead of SEQUENCE(\$I\$2,,0)

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J
1	01/06/2020	01/05/2020	01/04/2020	01/03/2020	01/02/2020	01/01/2020		Date	How many months	
2								01/06/2020	6	
3										
4										
5										
6										
7	-	EDATE(\$H	\$2,-SEQUEN	CE(, <b>\$I\$2,0</b> ))						
8										
9										
10										
11		Horizontal	list of desce	ending date	es					
12		Starting da	te & size of	list are pa	rameters					
13		H2 & I2, re	espectively							
14										
15										
16										
17										

Figure 5.23: Sequence of descending dates: 1st of each month

# A substitute for NETWORKDAYS.INTL (for a certain month)

The following formula is my *replacement* for Excel's built-in **NETWORKDAYS.INTL** function. As the name suggests, it calculates the number of working days in a given period, excluding any combination of weekends (specified in cells D2:D3) and holidays (specified in cells J2:J10) [you can add as many holidays as you need in column J]. This function is very flexible: it can exclude either only the weekends or only the holidays, both or none. My solution takes the original idea one step further: it lists all the net working days for the specified month.

To make the formula shorter, we defined a Named Range MonCal as can be seen in *Figure 5.25*. The formula within that Named Range takes the month (parameter in cell G2) and generates the dates of all the month's days. This is a relatively simple formula. The main formula, however, is quite complicated and an explanation is due. It has three steps:

Step 1: Filter only dates which do not fall on the weekend days: neither on Friday (cell D6) nor on Saturday (cell D3).

Step 2: *Stacking* the filtered dates from *Step 1* with the list of holidays dates.

Step 3: Now that we have the holidays twice (one in MonCal and one from *Step 2*), the **UNIQUE** function removes those duplicate values to give us the desired result: list of days that are neither weekends nor holidays. The third argument of the **UNIQUE** function is: 1, which tells the function to return rows that occur exactly once in the array.

To visualize the result, we have added the month's calendar (in the middle of the following figure):



Figure 5.24: Instead of NETWORKDAYS.INTL (for a certain month)

#### The MonCal Named Range

The formula within the MonCal Named Range takes the month (parameter in cell G2) and generates the dates of all the month's days:

Name Manager			? ×
<u>N</u> ew	<u>E</u> dit <u>D</u> elet	e	<u>F</u> ilter ▼
Name	Value	Refers To	Scope
III MonCal	{}	= SEQUENCE(EOMONTH(Net!\$G\$2,0)-Net!\$G\$2+1,,Net	t!\$G\$2) Net
<			>
Refers to:			
× v = SEQU	UENCE(EOMONTH(Net!\$G	\$2,0)-Net!\$G\$2+1,,Net!\$G\$2)	<u>1</u>
			Close

Figure 5.25: The MonCal Named Range "begets" the array of the month's dates

# A substitute for the NETWORKDAYS.INTL (any period)

This is another version of the **NETWORKDAYS.INTL**, however here we have some differences when compared to the previous section:

Instead of an array of net working days, here, we calculate the number of net working days (the same as Excel's **NETWORKDAYS.INTL**).

The holidays parameter (column O) can be ignored altogether if cell J2 is set to 0 or left blank.

This formula can calculate any range of days, not necessarily one whole month.

The **SUM** function uses the name **wk** (defined by the **LET** function to shorten the formula), to extract only dates which do not fall on either Friday (cell G2) or Saturday (cell G3). Of course, you can define any weekend days. If you do not want to exclude any weekend days, just leave these cells empty (or with 0) as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М		Ν		0		Р	Q
1					start date	end date	weekend			With h	olidays?					H	olida	ays		
2					01/10/2022	22/10/2022	6	Friday		1	Yes					10	<b>)/10</b>	/2022		
3	12						7	Saturday								10	5/10	/2022		
4																1	7/10	/2022		
5																				
6																				
7	=LET(w	k,WE	EKI	DAY(	SEQUENCE	SFS2-SES2+1	<mark>,,\$E\$2)),I</mark> I	FERROR(S	UM((wk	< <mark>≪\$G\$2</mark>	)*(wk<>\$G	\$3))-(	COUR	NT(O	<b>):O</b> )*	J2,"	Illeg	al"))		
8																				
9	NT 4	1	<b>X</b> 7		1.0.0		0.0						_							
10	Notes:		YO	u cai	n denne otne	er weekend d	lays (1.e. 5	aturday, s	Sunday	)			0	cto	ber	202	22			
11		2	If t	here	is only one v	veekend, you	u can leav	e the other	r empty	(or 0)		S	М	Т	w	Т	F	S		
12															-	~	-	<b>U</b>		
13												2	3	4	5	12	4	8		
1.5	Instand	of	NET	CXX/	OPKDAVS	INTI						16	17	18	10	20	21	22		
15	Insteat	1 01.					4		0			1 10		10	15	20	21			
16	How n	nan	y w	ork	ang days a	re there b	etween	two date	87											
17	Includ	ling/	exc	ludi	i <mark>ng: weeke</mark>	nds and/o	r holida	ys												
18	you ca	n ig	nor	e ei	ther week	ends or ho	olidays o	r both b	у											
19	setting	the	rel	eva	nt parame	ters to 0 (	or blanl	k)												

Figure 5.26: Instead of NETWORKDAYS.INTL (any period)

#### A substitute for NETWORKDAYS.INTL - with/ without weekends

The last version of **NETWORKDAYS.INTL**'s replacement can exclude only weekends. These are defined in cells E2 and E3 and can be replaced or ignored completely, according to your needs. Here again, we employ a Named Range to keep the formula terse. As in the previous section, A substitute for **NETWORKDAYS.INTL** (for a certain month), the formula in it calculates the entire monthly calendar. As opposed to the two previous versions, this formula displays both the array of working days for the chosen month (parameter in cell G2) along with the number of total working days as shown in the following screenshot:

A	В	С	D	E	F	G	н	I	J	K
1	Workdays excluding weekends			Weekend Days		Month				
2	01/04/2021			6	Fri	01/04/2021				
3	04/04/2021			7	Sat					
4	05/04/2021									
5	06/04/2021									
6	07/04/2021		=FIL	TER(MonCal,(WEE	KDAY(MonCal)�\$	E\$2)*(WEEKDA	Y(Mon	Cal) <b>&gt;\$E\$3</b> )	)	
7	08/04/2021									
8	11/04/2021									
9	12/04/2021			Total work days	21					
10	13/04/2021									
11	14/04/2021					=COUNT(B:B)				
12	15/04/2021									
13	18/04/2021									
14	19/04/2021		Dis	olay only workday	ys for the month <b>s</b>	<b>&amp; year in the p</b>	arame	eter G2		
15	20/04/2021		The	resulting array (	in col. <mark>B</mark> ) excludes	weekends.				
16	21/04/2021		If in	your country the	e weekend is defin	ed differently				
17	22/04/2021		(i.e.,	, Friday & Saturo	lay ), change cells	E2:E3 accord	ingly.			
18	25/04/2021		You	can get the whol	e month if cells <b>E</b>	2:E3 will cont	ain zei	oes.		
19	26/04/2021		The	monthly calenda	r is calculated aut	tomatically in a	a form	ula		
20	27/04/2021		defi	ned in the Name	Manager					
21	28/04/2021									
22	29/04/2021									

Figure 5.27: Instead of NETWORKDAYS.INTL (with/without weekends)

#### The Definition of MonCal

The formula within the MonCal Named Range takes the month (parameter in cell G2) and generates the dates of all the month's days as shown in the following screenshot:

Edit Name	7	?	×
<u>N</u> ame:	MonCal		
Scope:	Sheet2 🗸		
C <u>o</u> mment:			^
			~
<u>R</u> efers to:	= SEQUENCE(EOMONTH(Sheet2!\$G\$2,0)-Sheet2!\$G\$2+1,,Sheet2!\$G\$2)		Ť
	ОК	Cance	

Figure 5.28: Definition of MonCal

# How many working days are there in each month of a given period?

This formula *imitates* the **NETWORKDAYS**. **INTL** function. It calculates the net workdays for each month in the month's parameter (cells: M1:M4) for the period stated in cells E2:F2. The weekend days parameter (cells G2:G3) can be modified, according to

your country's weekends. If you do not want to exclude any weekend days, just leave those cells empty (or with 0) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.29: How many working days are there in each month of a given period

#### How many eligibility days?

This example demonstrates an imaginary social security office. Its customers are supposed to report every month on certain weekdays for them to be eligible for social security monthly allowances. The reporting period is from 01/08/2021 (cell B1) to 31/08/2021 (cell E1). In cells A4:A8 we have a list of customers. As stated above, each customer has certain days in a week in which he/she must report at the agency (cells B4:B8).

For example, Bridget has to report on Sundays and Mondays (1,2) whereas Catherine is supposed to show up at the agency every Sunday, Monday, Wednesday and Thursday (1,2,4,5) during the month.

In cells C4:C8 we calculate for each attendee the number of times they must report during the reporting period. So, for example, since August 2021 has five Sundays and five Mondays, Bridget must report 10 times in that month. Jessica, on the other hand, is required to arrive at the agency every day of the week, so she must show up 31 times in that month. A calendar of August 2021 is added (on the right-hand side of the figure) to assist in checking the accuracy of the solution as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F			G					
1	Reporting month	01/08/2021		End of Month	31/08/2021				Δ1	IUIIS	t 202	01		
2					1				~~~	igus	LUL			
	Customer	Weekdays	total reporting				Week	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa
3		to reoprt	days for current month				31	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	Bridget	12	10	•	=EOMONTH(I	B1,0)	32	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
5	Catherine	1245	18				33	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
6	Angelina	25	9				34	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
7	Jessica	1234567	31				34	22	20	24	20	20	21	20
8	Julie	45	8				35	29	30	31				
9														
10					<u> </u>									-
11		=SUM(N(W	EEKDAY(SEQUEN	CE(DAY(\$E\$1)	))=(MID(\$B	4,SEQUENC	E(,L	EN(	<mark>\$B</mark> 4	)),1	))))			
12							_	_		_				_
13				Each customer	has certain c	lays in a week	c whe	re h	e/sh	ie h	as to	o rej	port	•
14				For example: I	Bridget has to	report on Su	nday	and	l M	ond	ay			
15				While Jessica r	nust report o	n all weekday	s, fro	m S	und	lay	to S <sup>.</sup>	atui	day	
16														
17				Column C (tot	al reporting d	lays) calculate	es for	eac	h cı	isto	mer			
18				how many day	s he/she is sur	posed to rep	ort in	this	re	oprf	ing	moi	ıth.	
10				Since Aug 202	1 has 5 Sund	avs and 5 Mo	ndav	R	rido	et (	for 6	yan	nle	
19				has to report 1	0 times in the	t month	nuny:	, D	nag	~ 0		aan	-pic	·
20				has to report 1	o times in tha	it month								

Figure 5.30: How many eligibility days

#### The doctor's schedule (two versions)

The following two examples exhibit two settings of a schedule for a doctor's clinic. Viewing these two alternatives, each physician is free to choose their preferred timetable.

#### The doctor's schedule (version 1)

This is the first version of the doctor's schedule. We have two parameters: the opening hours of the clinic (cells J1:K1) and the time allotted per patient (cell E1). The formula builds the timetable accordingly (in Column A) as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	в	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L
1	08:00			Time gap allotted per patient	00:30			Office	hours:	08:00	16:00	
2	08:30											
3	09:00											
4	09:30											
5	10:00											
6	10:30											
7	11:00											
8	11:30			=\$A\$1+SEQUENCE((K1-J1)/E1)*\$E\$1								
9	12:00											
10	12:30											
11	13:00											
12	13:30											
13	14:00											
14	14:30											
15	15:00											
16	15:30											
17	16:00											
18				The Doctor's Schedule								
19												

Figure 5.31: The doctor's schedule (version 1)

#### The doctor's schedule (version 2)

This is the second version of the doctor's schedule. Instead of defining the opening and closing hours, we offer a slightly different approach: We set the number of daily open hours (in cell D1), the time allotted per patient (in cell F1) and the opening hour of the clinic (in cell H1):

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K
1			No. of clinic hours	7	minutes per patient	45	opening time	9			
2											
3	9:00										
4	9:45										
5	10:30										
6	11:15										
7	12:00		=SEQUENC	E(ROUNDU	JP(D1/(F1/60)+(F1/6	50),0),,H1	/24,(F1/60)/2	4)			
8	12:45										
9	13:30										
10	14:15										
11	15:00										
12	15:45										
13	16:30			A Dental	<b>Clinic's Schedul</b>	e: 3 Pai	ameters				
14				No. of da	ily open hours	<b>D1</b>					
15				Time allo	tted per patient	F1					
16				Clinic op	ens at	H1					
17											
18				The rule:	A patient's treat	tment w	on't be inte	rrupt	ed		
19				even if th	e closing time ha	s come					
20											

Figure 5.32: The doctor's schedule (version 2)

#### Monthly calendar – classic versus non-classic

Two monthly calendars: One - classic (Where the week starts on Sunday) and the second – Non-classic (where the week starts on the weekday of the month's first day). Both methods use the same formula, without any modification.

#### Monthly calendar - classic

This subsection illustrates the *Classic* monthly calendar: it starts on Sunday. The year (2017 parameter in cell E1) and the month (April chosen via data validation in cell E2) were selected for this illustration because April 2017 was a rare month: It had 6 weeks. Since this is a *classic* monthly calendar, the parameter in cell E3 is 1.

The calendar, as mentioned above, has only one formula (can be seen in cell A20). The other two formulae are set to create the weekday names (cells A11:G11) and generate the month name (cell D10).

The *trick* behind this calendar, along with the formula, is its Conditional Formatting technique, as can be seen in *Figure 5.34*.



Figure 5.33: Monthly calendar – classic

The technique used in the following figure is the *trick* behind this calendar. Along with the formula, this Conditional Formatting technique, can be seen in *Figure 5.34*. The entire range of the calendar (cells A12:G17) has a light background color. The cells in row 12 preceding the 1st of April (in cell G12) contain numbers less than 1 and we want to hide them. The same applies to the cells succeeding the last month's day, April 30th (in cell A17): all these cells hold values greater than 30, so we want to hide them too. So, for the first case we have rule no.1: **=A12<1** and for second one we have rule no.2: **=A12>DAY(DATE(\$E\$1,\$E\$2+1,))**. These rules are formatted with a transparent font, so they are invisible:

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager				?	×
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection					
Edit Rule Edit Rule	elete Rule 🔲 🖽 Dupli <u>c</u>	ate Rule 🔷 🗸			
Rule (applied in order shown)	Format	Applies to		Stop If T	rue
Formula: =A12<1	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$12:\$G\$17	Ť		
Formula: =A12>DAY(DATE(SES1,SES2+1,))	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$12:\$G\$17	Ť		
			OK Close	Ap	ply

Figure 5.34: Monthly Calendar – Classic – Conditional Formatting

#### Monthly calendar – non-classic

The non-classic calendar is identical in all details but one to the classic calendar, the difference in the value defined in cell E3. Now, the parameter is *non-classic* which means: the week starts on the weekday of the month's first day.

This slight change has an impact in two places:

- The weekdays (cells A11:G11) begin on Saturday and not on Sunday.
- The calendar adapts itself automatically to the new situation: the calendar now has only five rows, and not six rows as in the *classic* calendar. (However, we already know that actually six rows are displayed. Thanks to the Conditional Formatting mechanism, the superfluous cells are hidden because their font is transparent) as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	К	L	М	Ν	0	Р
1				Year	2017											
2				Month	4	¥	Classic=0	The we	ek sta	rts on	the wee	kday of	f the mor	th's firs	t day	
3				Classic	0		Classic<>0	The we	ek sta	rts on	Sunday	7				
4																
5		=TEXT	(DATE(	E1,E2,A12	2:G12),"b	1ddd")										
6																
7					=TEXT(	DATE(SES	51, <b>\$E\$2,1),</b> "	b1mmn	ım")							
8		/														
9	_ /															
10	1			April												
11	Sat	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri									
12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7									
13	8	9	10	11	12	13	14									
14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21									
15	22	23	24	25	26	27	28									
16	29	30	31													
17			38													
18																
19	SEO	UENCE		ES 1 WEE	KDAV(D	ATE/E1 E	2 1) 1)									
20	-SEQ	ULIVEL		5,1-11EE	n DAT (D	ATE(EI,I	<i>,,,,,</i> ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,									
22																
23				Non-Cla	assic Vie	w - The	week star	ts on t	he w	eekda	y of t	he mo	nth's fi	rst day		
24																
25																

Figure 5.35: Monthly calendar – non-classic

#### Monthly calendar in 20 languages

In this section, we will learn how to display 20 calendars in 20 different languages.

First, there are three parameters:

- the year (in cell E1),
- the month (in cell E2) (a drop-down list whose values are defined in cells R2:R13), (see *Figure 5.37*), and
- the language (in cell E3) (a drop-down list whose values are taken from cells M2:M22, (see *Figure 5.38*).

Then, we have three formulae:

- which sets the weekdays names (cells A11:G11) according to the language chosen in cell E3. It searches the table defined in columns M:O by the language name and fetches the day format (from Column O) to be implemented in the weekday names.
- which sets the month name (cell D9) according to the language chosen in cell E3. It searches the table defined in columns M:P by the language name and fetches the day format for that language (from Column P) to be implemented in the month name.
- which populates the calendar array (cells A11:G15). In this example, we will use the *non-classic* monthly calendar:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	н	I	J
1				Year	2022					
2				Month	9					
3				Language	Greek	*				
4										
5	=TEXT(WEI	EKDAY(DAT	E(\$E\$1,\$E\$2,	COLUMN()),	XLOOKUP(\$	E\$3,\$M\$2:\$M\$2	22,\$O\$2:\$O\$22))			
6		/								
7					=TEXT(DAT	E(SE\$1,SE\$2,1)	XLOOKUP(\$E\$.	3,\$M\$2:\$M\$22,;	\$P\$2:\$P\$22))	
8	/									
9				Σεπτέμβριος						
10	Πέμπτη	Παρασκευή	Σάββατο	Κυριακή	Δευτέρα	Τρίτη	Τετάρτη			
11	1	2	3	4	5	6	7			
12	8	9	10	11	12	13	14			
13	15	16	17	18	19	20	21			
14	22	23	24	25	26	27	28			
15	29	30								
16										
17		=SEQUENCI	E(ROUNDUP	(DAY(DATE(S	E\$1,E\$2+1,))	/7,0),7,)				
18										
19										
20										

Figure 5.36: Monthly calendar in 20 languages

### Monthly calendar in 20 languages – list of languages and formats

The dataset introduced in the following screenshot represents the table used in the previous screenshot to fetch the language (defined in cell E3) by the **XLOOKUP** function. The language (in our case: Greek) is searched in cells M2:M22. **XLOOKUP** returns the month format (cells P2:P22) for the month name in Greek (cell D9) and for the weekday names (cells O2:O22) which will be displayed in cells A10:G10.

The formula to fetch the month name in Greek can be seen in cell E7, and the formula to return the Greek weekday names is displayed in cell A5 (See *Figure 5.36*).

	М	Ν	0	Р
1	Language	Short Day Format	Long Day Format	<b>Month Name Format</b>
2	Italian	[\$-it-IT]ddd	[\$-it-IT]dddd	[\$-it-IT]mmmm
3	Arabic	[\$-ar-EG]ddd	[\$-ar-EG]dddd	[\$-ar-EG]mmmm
4	Hebrew	[\$-he-IL]ddd	[\$-he-IL]dddd	[\$-he-IL]mmmm
5	English (Br.)	[\$-en-BR]ddd	[\$-en-BR]dddd	[\$-en-BR]mmmm
6	English (US)	[\$-en-US]ddd	[\$-en-US]dddd	[\$-en-US]mmmm
7	German	[\$-de-DE]ddd	[\$-de-DE]dddd	[\$-de-DE]mmmm
8	French	[\$-fr-FR]ddd	[\$-fr-FR]dddd	[\$-fr-FR]mmmm
9	Greek	[\$-el-GR]ddd	[\$-el-GR]dddd	[\$-el-GR]mmmm
10	Chinese	[\$-zh-CN]ddd	[\$-zh-CN]dddd	[\$-zh-CN]mmmm
11	Japanese	[\$-ja-JP]ddd	[\$-ja-JP]dddd	[\$-ja-JP]mmmm
12	Hungarian	[\$-hu-HU]ddd	[\$-hu-HU]dddd	[\$-hu-HU]mmmm
13	Spanish	[\$-es-ES]ddd	[\$-es-ES]dddd	[\$-es-ES]mmmm
14	Portuguese	[\$-pt-PT]ddd	[\$-pt-PT]dddd	[\$-pt-PT]mmmm
15	Russian	[\$-ru-RU]ddd	[\$-ru-RU]dddd	[\$-ru-RU]mmmm
16	Czech	[\$-cs-CZ]ddd	[\$-cs-CZ]dddd	[\$-cs-CZ]mmmm
17	Dutch	[\$-nl-NL]ddd	[\$-nl-NL]dddd	[\$-nl-NL]mmmm
18	Turkish	[\$-tr-TR]ddd	[\$-tr-TR]dddd	[\$-tr-TR]mmmm
19	Bulgarian	[\$-bg-BG]ddd	[\$-bg-BG]dddd	[\$-bg-BG]mmmm
20	Danish	[\$-da-DK]ddd	[\$-da-DK]dddd	[\$-da-DK]mmmm
21	Hindi	[\$-hi-IN]ddd	[\$-hi-IN]dddd	[\$-hi-IN]mmmm
22	Polish	[\$-pl-PL]ddd	[\$-pl-PL]dddd	[\$-pl-PL]mmmm
23				

Figure 5.37: List of languages and their corresponding day- and month- formats

### Monthly calendar in 20 languages – list of month numbers

This is the list of months used in the data validation of the preceding section: *Monthly calendar in 20 languages* (See *Figure 5.36*, cell E2).

	R	
1	Months	
2	1	
3	2	
4	3	
5	4	
6	5	
7	6	
8	7	
9	8	
10	9	
11	10	
12	11	
13	12	
14		

Figure 5.38: List of the month numbers (drop-down list to choose the month from)

# Two methods for creating a list of the month's days

In this section, we will discuss two methods for creating a list of the month's days.

You should avoid the first one, which will yield wrong results (see *Figure 5.39*). It is better to use the second, dynamic one (see *Figure 5.40*). It assures us that we always get the correct number of days for the chosen month (February).

#### Monthly calendar – a bad attitude

This is an example of how not to create a dynamic monthly calendar: not all months have 31 days as can be seen in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.39: Monthly calendar – a bad attitude

#### Monthly calendar – a good attitude

This is a better approach to build a dynamic monthly calendar. The number of days in a given year and month can easily be found by using the **EOMONTH** function which

returns the desired month's last date. From that result, we extract the number of days, which is the first argument to the **SEQUENCE** function.

This way we can be sure that we have the correct number of days in the chosen month's calendar:



*Figure 5.40:* Monthly Calendar – a better attitude

#### Yearly calendar – good versus bad

Here again, we can see two attitudes to displaying the entire year's days. This time, the first one is better because it considers the fact that the chosen year (in cell E2) might be a leap year, a year in which there are 366 days and not 365:

	А	в	С	D	E	F	G	Н	I	J	K
1	Yearly Calendar				Date						
2	01/01/2020				01/01/2020						
3	02/01/2020										
4	03/01/2020										
5	04/01/2020										
6	05/01/2020										
7	06/01/2020										
8	07/01/2020										
9	08/01/2020		Do this	$\sim$	=SEQUENO	CE(365+(	DAY(DAT	E(YEAR(E2),3,)	)=29)*1,,E2)		
10	09/01/2020			_							
11	10/01/2020				This formu	ıla can h	andle bot	h leap and non	-leap years		
12	11/01/2020										
13	12/01/2020										
14	13/01/2020										
15	14/01/2020										
16	15/01/2020										
17	16/01/2020										
18	17/01/2020		Don't do this	×	=SEQUENC	CE(365,,E	2)				
19	18/01/2020										
20	19/01/2020				This formu	ila canno	ot handle l	leap years			
21	20/01/2020										
22	21/01/2020										
23	22/01/2020										

Figure 5.41: Yearly calendar – good versus bad

#### Dynamic yearly calendar - in one formula

This yearly calendar is dynamic. It uses the "classic" method (see preceding section: *Monthly calendar – classic versus non-classic, Figure 5.33*). It accepts only one parameter (the year, in cell K1) and builds dynamically both the weekday names (in cells A1:G1) and the calendar itself (cells A2:G55) as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	Κ	L	Μ	Ν	0	Р	Q	R	S	Т
1	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat			Year	2022									
2							01/01/2022													
3	02/01/2022	03/01/2022	04/01/2022	05/01/2022	06/01/2022	07/01/2022	08/01/2022													
4	09/01/2022	10/01/2022	11/01/2022	12/01/2022	13/01/2022	14/01/2022	15/01/2022		A1	=TEX	T(WE	EKD	AY(	SEQU	JENC	E(,7)	),"b1do	ld")		
5	16/01/2022	17/01/2022	18/01/2022	19/01/2022	20/01/2022	21/01/2022	22/01/2022													
6	23/01/2022	24/01/2022	25/01/2022	26/01/2022	27/01/2022	28/01/2022	29/01/2022													
7	30/01/2022	31/01/2022	01/02/2022	02/02/2022	03/02/2022	04/02/2022	05/02/2022		A2	=LET(	d,DAT	E(\$K	<b>\$1,1,</b>	1) <b>,SE</b> (	QUEN	ICE(5	4,7,1+d	-WEEK	DAY(d)	))
8	06/02/2022	07/02/2022	08/02/2022	09/02/2022	10/02/2022	11/02/2022	12/02/2022													
9	13/02/2022	14/02/2022	15/02/2022	16/02/2022	17/02/2022	18/02/2022	19/02/2022													
10	20/02/2022	21/02/2022	22/02/2022	23/02/2022	24/02/2022	25/02/2022	26/02/2022													
11	27/02/2022	28/02/2022	01/03/2022	02/03/2022	03/03/2022	04/03/2022	05/03/2022													
12	06/03/2022	07/03/2022	08/03/2022	09/03/2022	10/03/2022	11/03/2022	12/03/2022													
13	13/03/2022	14/03/2022	15/03/2022	16/03/2022	17/03/2022	18/03/2022	19/03/2022													
14	20/03/2022	21/03/2022	22/03/2022	23/03/2022	24/03/2022	25/03/2022	26/03/2022													
15	27/03/2022	28/03/2022	29/03/2022	30/03/2022	31/03/2022	01/04/2022	02/04/2022													
16	03/04/2022	04/04/2022	05/04/2022	06/04/2022	07/04/2022	08/04/2022	09/04/2022													
17	10/04/2022	11/04/2022	12/04/2022	13/04/2022	14/04/2022	15/04/2022	16/04/2022													
18	17/04/2022	18/04/2022	19/04/2022	20/04/2022	21/04/2022	22/04/2022	23/04/2022													
19	24/04/2022	25/04/2022	26/04/2022	27/04/2022	28/04/2022	29/04/2022	30/04/2022													
20	01/05/2022	02/05/2022	03/05/2022	04/05/2022	05/05/2022	06/05/2022	07/05/2022													
21	08/05/2022	09/05/2022	10/05/2022	11/05/2022	12/05/2022	13/05/2022	14/05/2022													
22	15/05/2022	16/05/2022	17/05/2022	18/05/2022	19/05/2022	20/05/2022	21/05/2022													

Figure 5.42: Dynamic yearly calendar - in one formula

#### **Dynamic yearly calendar – Conditional** Formatting

Similar to the Monthly *classic* calendar, this solution also uses Conditional Formatting with two rules (see *Figure 5.43*).

The first caters for cases where the year does not start on a Sunday.

The second takes care of instances where the year does not end on a Saturday.

As can be seen in *Figure 5.43*, these two rules use white (transparent) font color in such cases:

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager				?	×
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection					
Hew Rule	X Delete Rule	Duplicate Rule			
Rule (applied in order shown)	Format	Applies to		Stop If T	rue
Formula: =A2 <date(\$k\$1,1,1)< td=""><td></td><td>=\$A\$2:\$G\$2</td><td></td><td>± 🗌</td><td></td></date(\$k\$1,1,1)<>		=\$A\$2:\$G\$2		± 🗌	
Formula: =AS4>DATE(SK\$1,12,31)	1	-SASS4:SGSS5		<b>1</b>	
Font	Color=White				
			OK Clos	se Aj	pply

Figure 5.43: Dynamic yearly Calendar – Conditional Formatting

#### Dynamic yearly calendar - by month

The formula that builds the yearly calendar takes only one parameter: year (in cell O1).

The formula in cell A1 (shown in cell O3) propagates the month names in the 12 cells: A1:L1.

We build the dynamic calendar by writing the formula in cell A2 (displayed in cell O5) and then dragging it horizontally all the way to cell L2 as shown in the following screenshot:

	Α	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	Ν	0	Р	Q	R	S	Т	U	V
1	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec		year	2016							
2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1										
3	2	2	2	2	2 2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2		A1	=TEX1	(DATE	(,SEQU	ENCE(,:	12),),"bi	1mmm")		
4	3	3	3	3	3 3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3										
5	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4		A2	=SEQU	JENCE(	DAY(D	ATE(\$C	\$1,COI	UMN()	+1,)),1,)	
6	5	5	5	5	5 5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5										
7	6	6	6	6	5 6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6										
8	7	7	7	7	7 7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7										
9	8	8	8	8	3 8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8		<b>Buildi</b>	ng a yea	rly cale	ndar wi	th only	one fori	nula.		
10	9	9	9	9	) 9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9		The m	onth na	mes are	genera	ted by t	he form	ula in A	1	
11	10	10	10	10	0 10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10		The fo	rmula is	writter	n in cell	A2				
12	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11		and dr	agged h	orizont	ally all t	he wav	to cell I	.2		
13	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12										
14	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	13										
15	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14										
16	15	15	15	15	5 15	15	15	15	15	15	15	15										
17	16	16	16	16	5 16	16	16	16	16	16	16	16										
18	17	17	17	17	7 17	17	17	17	17	17	17	17										
19	18	18	18	18	3 18	18	18	18	18	18	18	18										
20	19	19	19	19	9 19	19	19	19	19	19	19	19										
21	20	20	20	20	0 20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20										
22	21	21	21	21	1 21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21										
23	22	22	22	22	2 22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22										
24	23	23	23	23	3 23	23	23	23	23	23	23	23										
25	24	24	24	24	4 24	24	24	24	24	24	24	24										
26	25	25	25	25	5 25	25	25	25	25	25	25	25										
27	26	26	26	26	5 26	26	26	26	26	26	26	26										
28	27	27	27	27	7 27	27	27	27	27	27	27	27										
29	28	28	28	28	3 28	28	28	28	28	28	28	28										
30	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	29										
0.4						1	1															

Figure 5.44: Dynamic yearly calendar – by month

#### Dynamic yearly calendar - by week

This yearly calendar is arranged by week. In each column (weekday) only the dates that fall on that weekday are displayed. The year's parameter is defined in cell N1.

The formula creating the calendar is defined in cell A2. The *trick* here is that the formula in cell A1 (which generates the weekday names) can be activated only after the formula in cell A2 has been *launched*. Please note that this is a *non-classic* calendar, which means that the week does not always start on Sunday (please see preceding

section: *Monthly calendar – classic versus non-classic, Figure 5.35*) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 5.45: Dynamic yearly calendar – by week

# Yearly Horizontal calendar with highlighted weekday (two examples)

This is a horizontal calendar in only one formula, but with two Conditional Formatting rules. The first rule refers to the calendar itself (cells B4:AF15, see *Figure 5.48*) and *controls* the color of all the calendar's cells whose dates fall on the same day as the weekday specified in the parameter Weekday (cell L1).

The second Conditional Formatting rule is *responsible* to display (in column AH) the name of the weekday chosen in L1 and *colored* by the first rule. The color, as can be seen in the following two figures (*Figure* 5.46 and *Figure* 5.47) are the same, both for the highlighted dates in the calendar and the weekday name displayed in column AH. Another *trick* shown here is that each weekday name is displayed in a different cell: Sunday – in cell AH4, Monday – in cell H5.... and Saturday – in cell AH10.

The formula (in cell B4) creates a horizontal calendar, in which each month of the year parameter (in cell I1) *stretches* to the right according to the month's size (number of days). It is copied (without any alterations) to cells B5:B15.

The months names (in column A) are generated in a manner similar to the one shown in *Figure 5.7*: *Display month names without a specified date* 

#### Yearly horizontal calendar

#### Example 1 (weekday chosen: Sunday)

In the following screenshot only Sundays (cell L1 is equal to 1) in the year 2022 are *painted*. The calendar is horizontal: Month names in A4:A15 and the dates in B4:AF15:

	Α	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	К	L	Μ	Ν	0	Р	Q	R	S	Т	U	V	W	Х	Υ	Ζ	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF	AG	AH	
1								year	2022	Weel	kday	1					Hor	izon	tal	Cal	endai	r in c	ne	For	mula	L .									
2																	The	for	mul	a fo	r eac	h mo	onth	is c	leter	min	ed :	auto	mati	ical	lv				
3																																			
4	Jan	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31		Sunday	
5	Feb	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28						
6	Mar	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
7	Apr	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30				
8	May	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
9	Jun	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30				
10	Jul	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
11	Aug	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
12	Sep	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30				
13	Oct	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
14	Nov	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	L			
15	Dec	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
16																																			
17			B	4	=S]	EQI	UEI	NCE(	,DAT	E(\$I\$	1,RC	<mark>W(</mark>	)-2,)	-DA	TE(	<mark>\$I\$1,</mark>	ROV	N()-:	3,))																
18																																			

Figure 5.46: Yearly horizontal calendar – example 1

#### Example 2 (weekday chosen: Saturday)

In the following screenshot only Saturdays (cell L1 is equal to 7) in the year 2022 are *painted*. The calendar is horizontal: Month names in A4:A15 and the dates in B4:AF15:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	Κ	L	М	Ν	0	Р	Q	R	S	Т	U	V	W	х	Y	Ζ	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF	AG	AH	
1								year	2022	Weel	cday	7					Hor	izon	tal	Cale	enda	r in d	ne ]	For	mula										
2																	The	for	mul	a fo	r eac	h mo	nth	is c	leter	min	ed a	uto	mati	call	y				
3																										_									
4	Jan	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
5	Feb	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28						
6	Mar	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
7	Anr	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30				
0	May	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	0	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	10	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	20	30	31			
•	Tur	1	2	2	-	5	0	7	0		10	11	12	13	11	15	10	17	10	10	20	21	22	23	24	25	20	27	20	20	20	51			
9	Jun	1	2	3	4	5	0	/	8	9	10	11	14	15	14	15	10	1/	19	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	20	21	28	29	30				
10	Jul	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	S	aturday	
11	Aug	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
12	Sep	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30				
13	Oct	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
14	Nov	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30				
15	Dec	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31			
16																																			
17			B	4	<b>=S</b> ]	EOI	UEI	NCE(	,DAT	E(SIS	1,RO	W	)-2,)	-DA'	TE(S	SI\$1.	ROV	NO-	3.))																
10						-		_	_	-	-	_		_	· · ·		-	-																	

*Figure 5.47:* Yearly horizontal calendar – example 2

### Yearly horizontal calendar - Conditional Formatting - calendar

The following figure depicts the Conditional Formatting pane which exhibits the rules "behind" the weekday names, in *Figure 5.46* and *Figure 5.47*. These rules apply to the calendar (cells B4:AF15).

Each cell in the dataset of yearly weekdays (B4:AF15) is checked to see if it matches the weekday in the parameter (cell L1): Sunday – in *Figure 5.46* and Saturday - in *Figure 5.47*. If it does match, then that cell is *painted* accordingly by the colors defined in the format: magenta – for Sunday (marked with label 1, as shown in *Figure 5.48*), orange – for Monday (marked with label 2, as shown in *Figure 5.48*), red – for Tuesday (marked with label 3, as shown in *Figure 5.48*), and so on:

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager		?	×
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection			
Mew Rule     Image: Constraint of the second secon			
Rule (applied in order shown) Format Applies to		Stop If Tr	ue
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(SIS1,ROW()-3,B4))=SLS1,SLS1=1,B4>0)  AaBbCcYyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	Ť		
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(SIS1,ROW()-3,B4))=SLS1,SLS1=2,B4>0)  AaBbCcYyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	Ì		
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(SIS1,ROW()-3,B4))=SLS1,SLS1=3,B4>0)  AaBbCcYyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	Ì		
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY[DATE(SI51,ROW()-3,B4))=SLS1,SLS1=4,B4>0)  ABbCcYyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	Î		
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY[DATE(SI51,ROW()-3,B4))=SLS1,SLS1=5,B4>0) O AaBbCcYyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	Î		
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY[DATE(SI51,ROW()-3,B4))=SLS1,SLS1=6,B4>0)  AabbccyyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	Î		
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(SIS1,ROW()-3,84))=SLS1,SLS1=7,84>0)  AaBbCcYyZz =SBS4:SAFS15	1		
ОК	Close	Ap	ply

Figure 5.48: Yearly horizontal calendar - Conditional Formatting - calendar

#### Yearly horizontal calendar - Conditional Formatting weekday names

The following figure depicts the Conditional Formatting pane which exhibits the rules *behind* the weekday names, in *Figure 5.46* and *Figure 5.47*. These rules apply to cells (AH4:AH10).

For each weekday chosen in L1, the corresponding weekday name is displayed in cells: AH4:AH10 and is *painted* accordingly by the colors defined in the format:

magenta – for Sunday (marked with label 1, as shown in *figure 5.49*), orange – for Monday (marked with label 2, as shown in *figure 5.49*), red – for Tuesday (marked with label 3, as shown in *Figure 5.49*), and so on. If cell L1 contains 1 (Sunday) then cell AH4 is selected and painted in magenta (marked with label 1, as shown in *Figure 5.49*); if cell L1 contains 2 (Monday) then cell AH5 is selected and painted in orange (marked with label 2, as shown in *Figure 5.49*), and so on. Cells (AN4:AN10) which cannot be seen on *Figure 5.46* and *Figure 5.47* contain the weekday names: Sunday to Saturday.

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager											
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection											
Hew Rule Edit Rule X Delete Rule	Duplicate Rule										
Rule (applied in order shown)	Format	Applies to		Stop If Tr	ue						
Formula: =AND(SAHS4=SANS4,SLS1=1)	AaBbCcYyZz	= SAHS4	Ť								
Formula: =AND(SAHS5=SANS5,SLS1=2)	AaBbCcYyZz	= SAHS5	Î								
Formula: =AND(\$AH\$6=\$AN\$6,\$L\$1=3)	AaBbCcYyZz	= SAHS6	1								
Formula: =AND(\$AH\$7=\$AN\$7,\$L\$1=4)	AaBbCcYyZz	= \$AH\$7	1								
Formula: =AND(\$AH\$8=\$AN\$8,\$L\$1=5)	AaBbCcYyZz	= SAHS8	1								
Formula: =AND(\$AH\$9=\$AN\$9,\$L\$1=6)	AaBbCcYyZz	= SAHS9	Î								
Formula: =AND(SAHS10=SANS10,SLS1=7)	AaBbCcYyZz	=SAHS10	1								
		OK	Close	App	ply						

Figure 5.49: Yearly horizontal calendar - Conditional Formatting - weekday names

# Yearly vertical calendar with highlighted weekday (2 examples)

The vertical calendar in this section is similar to the one in the previous section: Yearly horizontal calendar with highlighted weekday (two examples) (*Figure 5.46*).

The only significant difference is in the layout (vertical vs. horizontal) and, of course, in the formula. Here too, the formula is copied (vertically) from A4 to L4. Also, here we have two Conditional Formatting rules, one for the calendar (see *Figure 5.52*) and the second for the weekday names (see *Figure 5.53*).

#### Yearly vertical calendar – example 1

The calendar in the following screenshot is similar to the one in *Figure 5.46* but here it is vertical: Month names are in cells A3:L3. Only Sundays are painted since the weekday parameter (cell J1) is equal to 1:



Figure 5.50: Yearly vertical calendar – example 1

#### Yearly vertical calendar – example 2

The calendar in the following screenshot is similar to the one in *Figure 5.47* but here it is vertical: Month names are in cells A3:L3. Only Saturdays are painted since the weekday parameter (cell J1) is equal to 7:



Figure 5.51: Yearly vertical calendar – example 2

### Yearly vertical calendar – Conditional Formatting - calendar

The following figure depicts the Conditional Formatting pane which exhibits the rules "behind" *Figure 5.50* and *Figure 5.51*. These rules apply to the vertical calendar (cells A4:L34)

Each cell in the dataset of yearly weekdays (A4:L34) is checked to see if it matches the weekday in the parameter (cell J1): Sunday – in *Figure 5.50* and Saturday - in *Figure 5.51*. If it does match, then that cell is "painted" accordingly by the colors defined in the format: magenta – for Sunday (marked with label 1, as shown in *figure 5.52*), orange – for Monday (marked with label 2, as shown in *figure 5.52*), red – for Tuesday etc.

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager											
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection 🔍											
New Rule Edit Rule X Delete Rule	✓										
Rule (applied in order shown) F	ormat	Applies to		Stop If True							
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=1,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	1								
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=2,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	Ť								
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=3,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	Î								
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=4,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	Î								
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=5,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	Î								
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=6,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	1								
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=\$J\$1,\$J\$1=7,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$1\$34	Î								
		[	OK Close	Apply							

Figure 5.52: Yearly vertical calendar - Conditional Formatting - calendar

#### Yearly vertical calendar – Conditional Formatting – weekday names

The following screenshot (*Figure 5.53*) depicts the Conditional Formatting pane which exhibits the rules "behind" the weekday names, in *Figure 5.50* and *Figure 5.51* (cells N3 and N9, respectively). These rules apply to the weekday names (cells N3:N9)

For each weekday chosen in J1, the corresponding weekday name is displayed in cells N3:N9 and is painted accordingly with the same color of that weekday in the calendar (cells A4:L34): magenta – for Sunday (marked with label 1, as shown in *figure 5.53*), orange – for Monday (marked with label 2, as shown in *figure 5.53*), red – for Tuesday etc.

Cells (AC2:AC8) which cannot be seen on *Figure 5.50* and *Figure 5.51* contain the weekday names: Sunday to Saturday.

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager ?									
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection									
Edit Rule X Delete Rule	🖽 Duj	pli <u>c</u> ate Rule 🔷 🗸							
Rule (applied in order shown)		Format	Applies to		:	Stop If Tr	ue		
Formula: =AND(\$N\$3=\$AC\$2,\$J\$1=1)	0	AaBbCcYyZz	= \$N\$3		Ť				
Formula: =AND(\$N\$4=\$AC\$3,\$J\$1=2)	8	AaBbCcYyZz	=SNS4		<b>1</b>				
Formula: =AND(\$N\$5=\$AC\$4,\$J\$1=3)	6	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$N\$5		1				
Formula: =AND(\$N\$6=\$AC\$5,\$J\$1=4)	0	AaBbCcYyZz	=SNS6		1				
Formula: =AND(\$N\$7=\$AC\$6,\$J\$1=5)	6	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$N\$7		1				
Formula: =AND(\$N\$8=\$AC\$7,\$J\$1=6)	6	AaBbCcYyZz	= SNS8		1				
Formula: =AND(\$N\$9=\$AC\$8,\$J\$1=7)	0	AaBbCcYyZz	= \$N\$9		<b>1</b>				
				OK Clo	se	Ap	ply		

Figure 5.53: Yearly vertical calendar – Conditional Formatting – weekday names

# Yearly calendar: one formula with Conditional Formatting

This is the last yearly calendar with one formula. Here we have only one Conditional Formatting rule, but since we have only the YEAR parameter (in cell H1) and no weekday to select, the calendar is formatted with each weekday having its own color (the color legend is displayed in cells N2:O8).

NOTE: If you feel that the calendar is too cluttered, you can change the Conditional Formatting rule (for example, to ignore Fridays and Saturdays).



Figure 5.54: Yearly Calendar – One formula with Conditional Formatting

#### **Conditional Formatting – each weekday is formatted differently**

The following screenshot depicts the Conditional Formatting rules for *Figure 5.54*. Each cell in the calendar (A4:L34) has a different color: Sunday is painted in magenta (as represented by label 1 in *Figure 5.55*), Monday is painted in orange (as represented by label 2 in *Figure 5.55*), Tuesday is painted in red (as represented by label 3 in *Figure 5.55*). These, of course, correspond to the colors associated with the weekday names in the previous figure: *Figure 5.54*: Yearly Calendar - One formula with Conditional Formatting (cells N2:P8).

Conditional Formatting Rules Manager				? ×
Show formatting rules for: Current Selection				
Edit Rule X Delete Rule	upli <u>c</u> ate Rule			
Rule (applied in order shown)	Format	Applies to		Stop If True
Formula: =AND(WEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=1,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$L\$34	Ť	
Formula: =AND(/VEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=2,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$L\$34	Ť	
Formula: =AND(VVEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=3,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$L\$34	Ì	
Formula: =AND(VVEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=4,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$L\$34	Î	
Formula: =AND(VVEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=5,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$L\$34	Ì	
Formula: =AND(VVEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=6,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4:\$L\$34	Ì	
Formula: =AND(VVEEKDAY(DATE(\$H\$1,COLUMN(),A4))=7,A4>0)	AaBbCcYyZz	=\$A\$4;\$L\$34	Ì	
			OK Close	Apply

Figure 5.55: Conditional Formatting – each weekday is formatted differently

### Conclusion

In this chapter, we have showcased **SEQUENCE** in more than 30 examples. This function has been used in various instances, on any scale of time: from second, minute, hour to week, month, and yearly operations. **SEQUENCE** is indispensable in this context. We demonstrated how to calculate time gaps (seconds, minutes, and so on), how to set timetables, how to compute net working days in a period of time with/without weekends and/or holidays, how to create a dynamic sequence of dates, how to build classic and non-classic monthly calendars, how to construct vertical and horizontal yearly calendars with/without formatting the weekdays, how to assemble presence tables, how to find out the number of a certain weekday in a particular period of time, and how to display your monthly calendar in other languages and many more.

In the next chapter, we will discuss some very interesting solutions related to financial challenges. We will see how the **SEQUENCE** function is requisite in shortening the process of solving fiscal problems.

### Points to remember

- **SEQUENCE** is ideal when constructing calendars, either monthly or yearly. Clever use of Conditional Formatting makes your calendar both flexible and outstanding.
- By using **SEQUENCE**, you can easily set up a perfect substitution for the NETWORKDAYS.INTL both in scope and in flexibility.
- **SEQUENCE** easily generates the list of the first or last day of the months of a given year.
- **SEQUENCE** is phenomenal in setting timetables based on fixed gaps of time.

#### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

#### https://discord.bpbonline.com



# CHAPTER 6 Financial Operations with SEQUENCE

### Introduction

This chapter manifests the use of **SEQUENCE** in core financial functions. The implementation of this function in traditional fiscal functions is nothing short of a revolution. Now, one can quickly review several solutions at once. No need to code many formulae to view multiple results. Some finely chosen examples of businessoriented functions illustrate the advantages of using **SEQUENCE** in functions that hitherto were implemented without arrays, neither as input nor as output. These functions are the standard financial functions of Excel, used throughout the world of finance, especially in loans and investments.

### Structure

In this chapter, we will discuss the following topics:

- Examples of **SEQUENCE** with financial functions
  - Loan return by payments per period
  - PMT Periodic payment of a loan traditional method
  - Periodic payment of a loan a more flexible method
  - The Depreciation function in Excel DB

- o Equally divide a sum of money over a period of time
- o One formula: How varying loan amounts impact the loan's installments
- NPV No need for a Data table
- o PDURATION Multiple results
- The RATE function multiple results
- o RRI calculate the average annual interest rate of an investment
- SEQUENCE and SUM

### Objectives

The goal of this chapter is to give you, the reader of this book, some ideas on how to use "traditional" financial functions in a manner that will save you time as well as display several optional solutions simultaneously. This will make it easier for you to determine which is the scenario that best suits your needs, instead of wasting time running multiple simulations with a single argument and solution.

### **Examples of SEQUENCE with financial functions**

The following sections manifest the use of **SEQUENCE** in core financial functions.

#### Loan return by payments per period

We need to return a loan, but cannot decide how to *spread* the installments over a period of time. The number of payments per period is defined in cell E1. The larger this number, the smaller the number of periods. In principle, it does not really matter whether the period is a month, a quarter, or a year. We just want to know the total amount of periods given the number of installments (defined in A4:A8) and the parameter in E1.

So, for example, if we are supposed to return 18 installments (cell A4) where, in each period we return six installments, then the total period to return that loan would be three periods (result in G4). If we have only nine installments, (cell A6) then we need two periods (G6), to return six payments in in the first period and three payments in the second period. This is illustrated in the following figure:


Figure 6.1: Loan Return by payments per period

# **PMT - Periodic payment of a loan – traditional method**

When returning a loan, we want to know the amount of money we are supposed to pay on each installment, whether we return the money monthly, quarterly, or yearly. So far, we could calculate the PMT (periodic payment for constant payments and constant interest rate) for only one amount or only one interest rate, as explained in the example.

In the following example, we will demonstrate the monthly payment due for a fixed loan amount (PV in cell H2) and a fixed interest rate (4.40% = cell F2 + cell I2) for a period of 12 months (nper=number of periods, in cell G2). Since this is the traditional method, we get only result (in cell A2). To make the calculation more flexible, we added 2 spin buttons, one for the initial rate (in cell D2) and the second for the incremental rate (in cell K2). Cells E2 and J2, respectively, are helper cells, since the spin buttons can handle only integers, not fractions. F2 is the initial rate (4%). We divide cell E2 by 100 and cell I2 is the incremental rate (0.4%). We divide cell J2 by

1000. The first argument to the formula (B2) is the monthly rate (=4.40%/12) since we return the loan monthly as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L
1	<b>Monthly payment</b>	monthly rate				inital rate (a)	nper	pv	increment (Δ)			
2	-8533.28	0.3667%			- 4	4%	12	100000	0.40%	4	<b></b>	
3	1			-		1					•	
4												
5						=E2/100						
6												
7	=PMT(\$B2,\$G	<b>\$2,\$H\$2)</b>										
8						This is the w	ell-know	n PMT	function. It re	turns onl	y one value.	
9			<u>۱</u>			Here we calc	ulate the	monthl	y return for a	loan:		
10		=(F2+I2)/12				Loan of 100	)00\$ (Ce	ll H2) fe	or a period of	one year	(12 months) (Cell G2)	
11						where the an	nual rate	(F2) cl	nanges in Δ ac	cording t	to paramter ( <mark>I2</mark> ).	
12						We added 2	addition	al parar	neters to make	e the form	nula more dynamic:	
13						1. the initial	rate (Cel	l F2)				
14						2. increment	of the in	itial rate	e (in cell I2)			
15	Checking results w	vith: loancalcul	ator.or	g		Both parame	eters are	controll	ed by a spin b	utton.		
16	https://www.loancalculato	r.org/										
17												
18						E2 & J2 are	only Hel	per cell	s,			
19						since the Spi	n Button	cannot	handle fraction	ons,		
20						but only natu	iral num	bers.				
21												
22												

Figure 6.2: Monthly payment of a loan - "traditional" method

Now we can compare our calculation to the result in **www.loancalculator.org**. As can be clearly seen, our result in *Figure 6.2* and the site's result (in *Figure 6.3*) are identical:



The web's original easy-to-use JavaScript loan calculator Automatically calculates your monthly loan payments

Loan Details	Amount
Loan Amount \$	100000
Loan Term Years 🗸	1
Interest Rate (APR %)	4.4
Payments Per Year Monthly	12
Reset	Calculate
Loan Payments	Amount
Interest Only Payment	\$366.67
Amortizing Payments	\$8533.28

Figure 6.3: Monthly payment of a loan - comparing the result with Loan Calculator site

In the following figure, we can see that the **Spin** button for the initial rate is linked to cell E2. Since, as stated previously, the **Spin** button cannot display fractions, the desired interest rate (4%) is achieved in cell F2 by dividing E2 by 100 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 6.4: Monthly payment of a loan – Spin Button – Initial Rate

The following figure shows the **Spin** Button for the incremental rate. It is linked to cell J2. Since, as stated previously, the **Spin** button cannot display fractions, the desired incremental rate (0.4%) is achieved in cell I2 by dividing J2 by 1000 as shown in the following screenshot:

	G	Н	Ι	J		K	
np	er	pv	increment ( $\Delta$ )		<u> </u>		
	12	100000	0.40%	4	<b>▲</b>		
	Format Cont	rol		? ×			
	Size P	rotection Proper	ties Alt Text Control				
	<u>Current valu</u> Minimum va	ue: 4 alue: 0					
	Ma <u>x</u> imum va	alue: 10	•				
	Incremental Page chang	e:	•				
	Cell link:	\$J\$2	Ť				
	✓ <u>3</u> -D shad	ding					
-							
			ОК	Cancel			

Figure 6.5: Monthly payment of a loan – Spin Button – Incremental Rate

# Periodic payment of a loan – a more flexible method

As we have seen in the previous section, the traditional PMT function returns only one value. However, if we want to examine the PMT [=periodic payment] for several interest rates, we hereby suggest a more flexible method. The idea is that you can play with one or more arguments of this function, for example, the interest rate. Instead of feeding the formula with only one value, we can provide it with an array of value thanks to the **SEQUENCE** function. As can be seen in *Figure 6.6*, we have an array of 12 monthly interest rates (cells B2:B13), starting from 4% (parameter in F2) growing by the increment defined in I2. The **SEQUENCE** function within the PMT formula: **SEQUENCE(F5,F2,I2)/12** - creates the array shown in B2:B13 and enables us to generate a simulation of 12 monthly payments (as can be seen in the result's array, cells A2:A13) for 12 different monthly rates, as opposed to just one payment in Section, *Periodic payment of a loan – traditional method* above.

The same method of **Spin** buttons is used here, exactly as in our previous example (see *Figure 6.4* and *Figure 6.5*), so there is no need to display them again.

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L		
1	Monthly payment	monthly rate				inital rate	nper	pv	increment (Δ)					
2	-8514.99	0.3333%		•	4	4%	12	100000	0.40%	4	•			
3	-8533.28	0.3667%									•			
4	-8551.59	0.4000%				No. of sim	ulations							
5	-8569.92	0.4333%				12								
6	-8588.27	0.4667%												
7	-8606.64	0.5000%					Using SE	QUEN	CE to simul	ate loa	an installments:			
8	-8625.04	0.5333%					The usua	l PMT	returns only	one	value (see previous example)			
9	-8643.46	5667%					Now you	can "p	olay" with th	e argi	iments and return many results			
10	-8661.90	0.6000%					by dynan	nically	changing, fo	r exar	nple, the yearly interest rate.			
11	-8680.36	0.6833%					We checl	k the m	onthly retur	n for	a 12-month ( <mark>G2</mark> ) 100000\$ loan (l	<b>H2)</b>		
12	-8698.84	0.6667%					by chang	ing the	annual rate	<b>(F2)</b>	in $\Delta$ according to paramter (12):			
13	-8717.35	0.7000%					4%, 4.4%	6, <b>4.8</b> %	ó8.4%					
14							The annu	ial rate	ese are conve	rted i	nto monthly rates (in cells <mark>B2:B</mark> 1	<b>(3)</b>		
15	=PMT(SEQUENC	CE(F5,,F2,I2)/12	2,G2,I	<b>H2</b> )			because t	the pay	ments are m	onthly	у.			
16							Both F2	& <mark>I2</mark> aı	e controlled	by sp	in buttons (in <mark>D2,K2</mark> respectively	y).		
17	7 Checking results with: calculator.net							E2 & J2 are only Helper cells, since the Spin Buttons cannot handle						
18	https://www.calculator.net	<u>t/</u>					fractions	, but or	nly natural n	umbe	rs.			
19														

Figure 6.6: Periodic payment of a loan – a more flexible method

On comparing our calculation to the result in **www.loancalculator.org**. we can clearly see that the result (in *Figure 6.6*) (cell A2) and the site's result (in *Figure 6.7*) are identical:

#### Loan Calculator

#### Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically

Use this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as mortgages, auto loans, student loans, or personal loans, or click the links for more detail on each.



Figure 6.7: Periodic payment of a loan – compare result in cell A2 (Figure 6.6) with Loan Calculator site

Comparing our calculation to the result in **www.loancalculator.org**. As can be clearly seen, our result (in *Figure 6.6*) above (in cell A3) and the site's result (in *Figure 6.8*) are identical:

#### Loan Calculator

#### Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically

Use this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as mortgages, auto loans, student loans, or personal loans, or click the links for more detail on each.

Loan Amount \$100000	Results:
Loan Term 1 years 0 months	Payment Every Month         \$8,533.28           Total of 12 Payments         \$102,399.32           Total Interest         \$2,399.32
Interest Rate 4.4 %	View Amortization Table
Compound Monthly (APR) V	
Pay Back Every Month	98%
Calculate 🕟	

Figure 6.8: Periodic payment of a loan - compare result in cell A3 (Figure 6.6) with Loan Calculator site

The following figure (*Figure 6.9*) shows the same result as in cell A13 (*Figure 6.6*). It is displayed to compare our results with the site's results:

Amortized L Use this calculator student loans, or p	Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically Jse this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as <u>mortgages</u> , <u>auto loans</u> , <u>student loans</u> , or <u>personal loans</u> , or click the links for more detail on each.											
Loan Amount \$1	00000	Results:										
Loan Term 1	years months	Payment Every Month\$8,717.35Iotal of 12 Payments\$104,608.18Total Interest\$4,608.18										
Interest Rate 8.	4 %	View Amortization Table										
Compound M Pay Back E	Ionthly (APR) 🗸 very Month 🗸	95% Principal Interest										
Calcu	ılate 🌔											

#### Loan Calculator



## The Depreciation function in Excel – DB

Depreciation (do not mix it with deprecation) is the inevitable process by which an asset gradually reduces its value as time goes by. The original method requires a formula for each period (as can be seen in the upper part of *Figure 6.10*).

We propose a simpler solution where one formula (in cell C9) replaces five formulae. If the depreciation period is longer, then of course the advantage of this technique is even more conspicuous as shown in the following screenshot:

	A	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н		
1	Initial Cost	200,000								
2	Salvage value	25,000								
	Life	5	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5			
3	(depreciation period)									
4	Period	1,2,3,4,5	1	2	3	4	5			
5										
6		<b>Depreciation</b> amount	\$ 68,000.00	\$ 44,880.00	\$ 29,620.80	\$ 19,549.73	\$ 12,902.82			
7		calculated per year	=DB(B1,B2,B3,C4)	=DB(B1,B2,B3,D4)	=DB(B1,B2,B3,E4)	=DB(B1,B2,B3,F4)	=DB(B1,B2,B3,G4)			
8										
9		<b>Depreciation</b> amount	\$ 68,000.00	Year 1						
10		calculated at once	\$ 44,880.00	Year 2						
11		in one formula	\$ 29,620.80	Year 3						
12		for all 5 years	\$ 19,549.73	Year 4						
13			\$ 12,902.82	Year 5						
14										
15				=DB(B1,B2,B3,SEC	QUENCE(5))					
16										
17			Calculating the	declining-balanc	e depreciation of	f an asset				
18			The depreciatio	n (DB) calculated	l separately per	each year (5 fori	mulae C6:G6)			
19			can be achieved with only one formula instead of 5 (cell C9)							
20										
21										
22										

Figure 6.10: The Depreciation function – one formula instead of five

# Equally divide a sum of money over a period of time

The following figure indicates a simple procedure to equally divide a certain amount of money (defined in C2) into a defined number of months (in cell B2) starting from a certain date (visible in cell A2). The period's dates are constructed dynamically in row 1 (cells D1:O1) and the amounts per month are displayed in row 2 (cells D2:O2). The number of months defined in cell B2 cannot exceed 12:



Figure 6.11: Equally divide a sum of money over a given period of time

# One formula - How varying loan amounts impact the loan's installments

The traditional PMT function can handle only one amount at a time. But what if we would like to simulate more than one loan **Present value** (**PV**)?

Well, **SEQUENCE** comes to the rescue again:

We simulate two payment frequencies:

- Quarterly (in Figure 6.12) and
- Monthly (in *Figure 6.15*)

This is controlled by the parameter in cell E2 (Data Validation drop-down list with 2 values: 4 – quarterly, 12 – monthly).

*Figure 6.12* makes this evident. We have six arguments for this PMT simulation:

- 1. Payment Frequency (cell **E2**) = quarterly
- 2. Annual rate (in cell **G2**) = 1.50%

- 3. Number of payments (in cell H2) = 24
- 4. Loan amount (in cell **I2**) = 100,000
- 5. Increment (in cell **J2**) = 10,000
- 6. Upper limit (in cell K2) = 250,000

The last two arguments are *dedicated* for the dynamic solution: in the *traditional* method, we needed only the first four arguments. The new arguments (number 5 and 6) are arguments to the **SEQUENCE** function (as can be seen in cell D10): we start with the loan amount (I2) with increments of (J2) for a number of instances calculated in the expression: **(\$K\$2-\$I\$2)/\$J\$2+1** So, in column B (cells B2:B17) we can see the sequence of loan amounts, which correspond to the (quarterly) payments in column A (cells A2:A17).

With only one formula we clearly see how varying loan amounts are reflected in the periodic payments as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	<b>Quarterly Payment</b>	loan sum		payment fi	eq.		ann. rate	nper (mon.)	pv	increment	upper limit		
2	-12711.86	100,000		quarterly	4	×	1.50%	24	100000	10000	250000		
3	-13983.04	110,000			4								
4	-15254.23	120,000		Using SE	QUEN	CE to si	mulate loar	installment	ts: usual ]	PMT retui	ns only one	value.	
5	-16525.42	130,000		Now you o	an "p	lay" with	h <mark>6</mark> argume	ents and retu	ırn many	results			
6	-17796.60	140,000		We dynar	nically	change	pv: from 10	00K (I2) to 3	250K ( <mark>K</mark>	2) in incre	metnts of 1	0k ( <b>I2</b> )	
7	-19067.79	150,000		We also p	resent	two pay	ment frequ	encies: mon	thly (E2=	= <mark>12</mark> ) or qua	arterly ( <mark>E2</mark> =	=4)	
8	-20338.97	160,000											
9	-21610.16	170,000											
10	-22881.35	180,000	$\mathbf{i}$	=SEQUE	NCE((	<mark>\$K\$2-\$</mark> I	[ <mark>\$2)/\$J\$2+</mark> ]	<mark>1,,\$I\$2,\$J\$</mark> 2	2)				
11	-24152.53	190,000											
12	-25423.72	200,000											
13	-26694.90	210,000		=PMT(\$0	<mark>3\$2/\$1</mark>	E <mark>\$2,\$H\$</mark> 2	2/(12/\$E\$2	),SEQUEN	CE((\$K\$	<mark>2-\$I\$2)/\$</mark> J	[ <mark>\$2+1,,\$I\$2</mark>	.,\$ <b>J</b> \$2))	
14	-27966.09	220,000											
15	-29237.27	230,000											
16	-30508.46	240,000							Checking	; results wit	h: loancalcu	lator.org	
17	-31779.65	250,000							https://www.	loancalculator.o	rg/		
18				Simulati	on of	a loan							
19		An excelle	nt met	thod to se	e how	varyin	g loan am	ounts are i	reflected	in the p	eriodic pa	yment	
20													
21													

Figure 6.12: Multiple loan amounts (PV) – quarterly payment frequency

Checking the formula's accuracy for a \$100,000 loan (payment= quarterly, annual rate=1.5%, number of payments=24). The result in *Figure 6.12* (cell A2) is identical to the result in the following screenshot (*Figure 6.13*). The picture is from the Loan Calculator site:

#### Loan Calculator

#### Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically

Use this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as mortgages, auto loans, student loans, or personal loans, or click the links for more detail on each.



Figure 6.13: Multiple loan amounts (PV) – quarterly payment for a 100,000\$ loan

Checking the formula's accuracy for a \$250,000 loan (payment= quarterly, annual rate=1.5%, number of payments=24). The result in *Figure 6.12* (cell A17) is identical to the result in the following screenshot (*Figure 6.14*). The picture is from the Loan Calculator site:

### Loan Calculator

#### Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically

Use this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as mortgages, auto loans, student loans, or personal loans, or click the links for more detail on each.

Loan Amount	\$250000		Results:
Loan Term	2 years 0 months		Payment Every Quarter         \$31,779.65           Total of 8 Payments         \$254,237.17           Total Interest         \$4 237 17
Interest Rate	1.5 %		View Amortization Table
Compound	Quarterly	~	2* Principal
Pay Back	Every Quarter	~	98%
Ca	lculate 🌔		

The following screenshot is the counterpart of *Figure 6.12*. It shows the same loan simulation, but here, the pay back is monthly, not quarterly:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	Ι	J	K	L	М
1	Monthly Payment	loan sum		payment fr	eq.		ann. rate	nper (mon.)	pv	increment	upper limit		
2	-4232.08	100,000		monthly	12	×	1.50%	24	100000	10000	250000		
3	-4655.2	110,000											
4	-5078.50	120,000		Using SEC	QUEN	CE to si	nulate loan	i installment	ts: usual l	PMT retui	rns only one	e value.	
5	-5501.71	130,000		Now you o	an "p	lay" with	ı <mark>6</mark> argume	nts and retu	irn many	results			
6	-5924.92	140,000		We dynan	nically	change ]	pv: from 1(	00K (I2) to 3	250K ( <mark>K</mark>	2) in incre	metnts of 1	0k ( <b>I2</b> )	
7	-6348.12	150,000	$\mathbf{X}$	We also p	resent	two pay	ment frequ	encies: mon	thly (E2=	=12) or qua	arterly ( <mark>E2</mark> =	=4)	
8	-6771.33	160,000											
9	-7194.54	170,000											
10	-7617.75	180,000	$\mathbf{N}$	=SEQUE	NCE((	<mark>\$K\$2-\$</mark> I	<mark>\$2)/\$J\$2+</mark> i	<mark>1,,\$I\$2,\$J\$</mark> 2	2)				
11	-8040.96	190,000											
12	-8464.17	200,000											
13	-8887.37	210,000		=PMT(\$0	<mark>\$\$2/\$</mark> }	E <mark>\$2,\$H\$</mark> 2	<mark>2/(12/\$E\$2</mark> ]	),SEQUEN	CE((\$K\$	<mark>2-\$I\$2)/\$J</mark>	<mark> \$2+1,,\$I\$</mark> 2	.,\$ <b>J\$2</b> ))	
14	-9310.58	220,000											
15	-9733.79	230,000											
16	-10157.00	240,000							Checking	g results wit	h: loancalcu	lator.org	
17	-10580.21	250,000							https://www.	loancalculator.o	rg/		
18				Simulation	on of	a loan							
19		An excelle	nt met	thod to se	e how	varying	g loan am	ounts are i	reflected	in the p	eriodic pa	yment	
20													
21													

Figure 6.15: Multiple loan amounts (PV) – monthly payment frequency

Checking the formula's accuracy (*Figure 6.15*) for a \$100,000 loan (payment= monthly, annual rate=1.5%, number of payments=24). The result in *Figure 6.15* (cell A2) is identical to the result in the following screenshot (*Figure 6.16*). The picture is from the Loan Calculator site:

#### Loan Calculator

#### Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically

Use this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as <u>mortgages</u>, <u>auto loans</u>, <u>student loans</u>, or <u>personal loans</u>, or click the links for more detail on each.

Loan Amount \$	\$100000	Results:
Loan Term 2	2 years 0 months	Payment Every Month\$4,232.08Total of 24 Payments\$101,569.98Total Interest\$1,569.98
Interest Rate 1	1.5 %	View Amortization Table
Compound	Monthly (APR)	2%
Pay Back	Every Month 🗸	
Calc	ulate 🕟	

Figure 6.16: Multiple loan amounts (PV) – monthly payment for a 100,000\$ loan

Checking the formula's accuracy (*Figure 6.15*) for a \$100,000 loan (payment= monthly, annual rate=1.5%, number of payments=24). The result in *Figure 6.15* (cell A17) is identical to the result in the following screenshot (*Figure 6.17*). The picture is from the Loan Calculator site :

### Loan Calculator

#### Amortized Loan: Paying Back a Fixed Amount Periodically

Use this calculator for basic calculations of common loan types such as mortgages, auto loans, student loans, or personal loans, or click the links for more detail on each.

Loan Amount	\$250000		Results:
Loan Term	2 years 0 months		Payment Every Month         \$10,580.21           Total of 24 Payments         \$253,924.96           Total Interest         \$3 924 96
Interest Rate	1.5 %		View Amortization Table
Compound	Monthly (APR)	•	2%
Pay Back	Every Month	~	98%
Cal	culate 🌔		

Figure 6.17: Multiple loan amounts (PV) - monthly payment for a 250,000\$ loan

## NPV – No need for a data table

This section explains how the data table in Excel's Data Tab menu (**Data\*Forecast\* What-If Analysis\*Data table**) becomes redundant if we use the **SEQUENCE** function.

The following is a sensitivity analysis of Net Present Value (NPV):

- We have a two-dimensional array: the vertical (cells B2:B12) analyses the cash flow from: 10% to: +10% (in increments of 2%) [see cells N5:O7] whereas the horizontal array (cells C1:L1) examines the cost of capital from: 2% to: 20% (in increments of 2%) [see cells N1:O3]
- The investment (-500) can be seen in E17. We are analyzing the cash flow for years 1-6 (cells F17:K17).
- As can be seen in the formula written in cell C2, the NPV is calculated for the cash flow array (C2:C12, corresponding to B2:B2). The formula in cell C2 is then dragged to the right all the way to the last horizontal array item: C2:L2.

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	К	L	M N	0	Р	Q
1			2%	4%	6%	8%	10%	12%	14%	16%	18%	20%	start	2%	horizontal	
2	0.9	<mark>-10%</mark>	619.73	534.57	458.23	389.61	327.76	271.88	221.28	175.34	133.54	95.42	incr.	2%	(C1:L1)	
3	0.92	-8%	644.62	557.56	479.52	409.38	346.16	289.04	237.31	190.34	147.62	108.66	size	10		
4	0.94	-6%	669.50	580.55	500.82	429.14	364.55	306.19	253.33	205.35	161.69	121.89				
5	0.96	4%	694.38	603.54	522.11	448.91	382.95	323.34	269.36	220.36	175.77	135.12	start	-10%	vertical	
6	0.98	-2%	719.27	626.54	543.41	468.68	401.34	340.50	285.39	235.37	189.85	148.35	incr.	2%	(B2:B12)	
7	1	0%	744.15	649.53	564.70	488.45	419.73	357.65	301.42	250.37	203.93	161.58	size	11		
8	1.02	2%	769.03	672.52	585.99	508.22	438.13	374.80	317.45	265.38	218.01	174.81				
9	1.04	4%	793.92	\$95.51	607.29	527.99	456.52	391.96	333.48	280.39	232.09	188.04				
10	1.06	6%	818.80	7 8.50	628.58	547.76	474.92	409.11	349.50	295.40	246.17	201.28				
11	1.08	<mark>8%</mark>	843.68	74.49	649.88	567.53	493.31	426.26	365.53	310.40	260.25	214.51				
12	1.1	<b>10%</b>	868.56	764,48	671.17	587.30	511.71	443.41	381.56	325.41	274.32	227.74				
13																
14				=NPV(SEQ	UENCE(	<mark>,\$0\$3,\$0</mark> \$	5 <mark>1,\$O\$2</mark> ),	(\$F\$17:\$]	K\$17)*\$A	2)+\$E\$17	7					
15																
16					year 0	year 1	year 2	year 3	year 4	year 5	year 6					
17					-500	100	150	200	250	300	350					
18																
19		=1+SEQ	<b>UENCE</b> (	07,,05,06)		NPV - N	et Pres	ent Valı	ie in one	formu	la					
20						No need	for Wh	at-IF A	.nalysis (	Data T	able)					
21						The sam	e form	ula (in <b>(</b>	C <mark>2) is co</mark>	pied un	til C12					
22						to gener	ate a "d	lata tab	le" :-)							

So here you have it, one formula instead of the *old-fashioned* data table:

Figure 6.18: NPV – instead of a Data Table

## **PDURATION - Multiple results**

The classic **PDURATION** function calculates the number of periods (in years or in months) until a certain investment amount (in our example: cell B1 = \$8000) reaches the desired **Future value** (**FV**), in our case: \$16,000 (in cell B2).

The classic solution is shown in cell D18. The **PDURATION** function takes three arguments: Monthly Rate (cell B20), PV and FV (B1 and B2, respectively, as explained previously).

However, replacing the first argument with an array (cells D5:D13), yields an array of results, as can be seen in cells A5:A13. The array size is set in cell A3. To make the solution even more flexible, we have added 2 spin buttons: one for the annual rate (in cell H1, linked to G1) and one for the increments ( $\Delta$  in cell H2, linked to G2). Thus, we can control both the initial annual rate and the size of the increments, as shown in the following screenshot:

		А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М	N	0
1	PV		8000			Annual rate	0.04	4	÷							
2	FV		16000			$\Delta$	0.01	1	÷							
3	No. o	f Rates	9													
4					Annual rates											
5		208.291			0.04			PDU	RATION	I: How	many	periods (	does it	take fo	r the	
6		166.702	1		0.05			invest	ment (B	1) to r	each th	e desired	l goal	( <mark>B2), gi</mark>	ven an	
7		138.976			0.06			array	of rates	(starti	ng with	<mark>1 4% (ce</mark> l	ll F1) v	vith inc	rements	
8		119.171			0.07			of 1%	(Cell F	2). The	e array	size is se	t in ce	ll B3		
9		104.318			0.08			The a	rray of a	annual	rates i	s display	ed in <mark>I</mark>	<b>D5:D13</b>		
10		92.766			0.09			The a	rray of :	results	(B5:B1	3) is give	en in n	nonths		
11		83.524			0.10			The S	pin but	tons (H	1 & H	2) are lin	ked to	G1 &C	<b>32</b>	
12		75.962			0.11			respe	ctively, a	and allo	ow us t	o control	both 1	the star	ting	
13		69.661		Υ.	0.12			annua	l rate (	F1) and	l the in	crements	s (F2)			
14																
15	=PD	<b>JRATIO</b>	N(SEQUE	NCE	<mark>(B3,,F1,F2)/12</mark>	,B1,B2)										
16																
17																
18					166.702			The "	traditio	nal" Pl	DURA'	FION (01	ne rate	e and or	ne result)	
19	Annı	al Rate	0.05					in cell	<b>D18 is</b>	shown .	just foi	: compai	rison:			
20	Mon	hly Rate	0.00417		=PDURATIO	N(B20,B1,B2)		SEQU	JENCE,	howev	er, allo	ws us m	ultiple	results		
21																

Figure 6.19: The PDURATION function – "classic" vs. "revolutionary"

The **Spin button** for the annual rate is defined in cell H1. It is linked to cell G1. Since the rates are expressed in percentage, the value in G1 is divided by 100 as shown in the following screenshot:

E	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	
Annual rate	0.04	4		Format Control			?	×
	0.01	1		Size Protect <u>C</u> urrent value: <u>Minimum value:</u> <u>Maximum value:</u> <u>Incremental chang</u> Page change Cell Jink: <u>J</u> 3-D shading	ion Propertie	s Ait Text Control		
						O	K Ca	ncel

Figure 6.20: The PDURATION function - Spin Button - Annual Rate

The **Spin button** for the interest rate increments is defined in cell H2. It is linked to cell G2. Since the rates are expressed in percents, the value in G2 is divided by 100 as shown in the following screenshot:

Δ	0.01	Format Control	?	×
		Size Protection Properties Alt Text Control Gurrent value: 1 Minimum value: 9 Variant al change: 1 Page change: Cell Jink: SG52	Can	icel

*Figure 6.21*: The PDURATION function – Spin Button – Increment ( $\Delta$ )

### The RATE function – multiple results

The **RATE** function usually returns only one value. It takes three arguments:

- Loan period (cell D1, in *Figure 6.22*)
- Monthly payment (cell D2, in *Figure 6.22*)
- Loan amount (cell D3, in *Figure 6.22*)

However, by replacing the last argument with an array of 11 members (parameter in cell G1), as shown in cells D7:D17, we can examine the impact of 11 different loan amounts on the monthly rate, (cells A7:A17) where both the loan period and the monthly payment are immutable.

The multiple results option in the **RATE** function is possible, of course, thanks to the **SEQUENCE** function as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L
1			Loan period (months)	60	Number of Simul	ations	11					
2			Monthly payment	600								
3			Loan amount	\$ -25,000.00								
4			delta loan amount	\$ -500.00								
5												
6	Monthly Rate			Loan Amount		Checking P	MT for <b>I</b>	Monthl	y Rate ca	lculated ir	n A7:A17	
7	1.283%			\$ -25,000.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A7,\$D\$	l,D7)		
8	1.209%			\$ -25,500.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A8,\$D\$	l,D8)		
9	1.136%	1		\$ -26,000.00	$\mathbf{N}$	\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A9,\$D\$	l,D9)		
10	1.065%			\$ -26,500.00	$\mathbf{A}$	\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A10,\$D	\$1,D10)		
11	0.996%			\$ -27,000.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A11,\$D	\$1,D11)		
12	0.929%			\$ -27,500.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A12,\$D	\$1,D12)		
13	0.864%			\$ -28,000.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A13,\$D	\$1,D13)		
14	0.800%			\$ -28,500.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A14,\$D	\$1,D14)		
15	0.738%			\$ -29,000.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A15,\$D	\$1,D15)		
16	0.678%	· \		\$ -29,500.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A16,\$D	\$1,D16)		
17	0.618%			\$ -30,000.00		\$ 600.00	<	=PMT	(\$A17,\$D	\$1,D17)		
18												
19		=RATE(D	1,D2,SEQUENCE(G1,	,D3,D4))		=SEQUEN	CE(G1,,I	)3,D4)				
20		Charles .										
21		Checkin	g multiple rates by c	changing grad	lually the loan	amount. T	ne Ioan	perio	a (D1) a	nd the		
22		monthly	payment (D2) are fi	ixed while we	check the impa	ct of varyi	ng loan	amou	ints (sho	wn in		
23		D7:D17)	on the monthly rate	e (cells A7:A1	7). No. of Simu	lations is c	lefined	in G1				

Figure 6.22: The RATE function – multiple results

# **RRI** - calculate the average annual interest rate of an investment

The RRI financial function calculates the average annual interest rate for a period.

It takes the following arguments:

The number of years invested (nper), the starting amount (PV), and the ending amount (FV).

This function usually returns only one value. However, by replacing the first argument with an array (created by the **SEQUENCE** function), we can simulate multiple interest rates for multiple periods. In our example, we simulate 10 different periods, from one year to 10 years. The interest rates, as can be seen in cells A1:A10 change accordingly.

The **PDURATION** function (explained previously, **PDURATION** – multiple results) implemented here in cells: H10:H19, is an excellent tool to verify the results of the **RRI** function as shown in the following screenshot. If we calculate the **PDURATION**, where its first argument is the rate (in cell A1=30%), the PV is 10000 (I2+J2) and FV is 13000 (I3+J3) – the result is: 1 (one year). This means that the **RRI** for one year, when the PV is: 10000 and FV is: 13000, will be 30%. The fact that these two

functions are *interchangeable* makes it possible to check the result of the **RRI** with the **PDURATION** function, and vice versa:



Figure 6.23: Adding multiple average annual interest rates instead of just one

The **Spin button** for incrementing the **Present Value** (**PV**) is defined in cell K2. It is linked to cell J2, and serves to enhance the PV in increments of 500: 500,1000,1500 etc. Its minimum value is: 0 and its maximum value is: 9500.

Н	Ι	J	K	IN	0
nepr (y)	10			Format Control	? ×
pv	10000	0		<u>Current value:</u>	
fv	12000	1000		Maximum value: 0	
				Page change: \$500 \$	
				Cell link: SJS2	
					OK Cancel
					Current

Figure 6.24: Adding multiple average annual interest rates spin button - PV

The **Spin button** for incrementing the **Future Value** (**FV**) is defined in cell K3. It is linked to cell J3, and serves to enhance the PV in increments of 1000: 1000,2000,3000 etc. Its minimum value is: 0 and its maximum value is: 30000:

Η	Ι	J	K	L	Μ	N	0	
nepr (y)	10							
pv	10000	0	• •	incremen	nts of 5	00		
fv	12000	1000		P. Format Control			?	×
				Çurrent value: Minimum value: Maximum value: Incremental chang Page change Cell Jink: ☑ 3-D shading	1000 0 ÷ 30000 ÷ 1000 ÷ 5J53		OK Ca	ncel

Figure 6.25: Adding multiple average annual interest rates spin button - FV

## **SEQUENCE and SUM**

In this section, we will learn how to sum only transactions from a certain part of the year.

The following figure demonstrates a method by which you can sum transactions which belong to a certain part of the year, for example: April-September, June-October, February-August, and so on.

The trick is to use the months to sum as an array: the number of elements to sum is determined by the expression: K2-K1+1 and the starting month is set by the **From Month** parameter (cell K1):

	А	В	(	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	М
1	Date	Sum								<b>From Month</b>	4		
2	01/01/2022	8277.00			SUM only	month>=4	& <=9			To Month	9		
3	01/02/2022	3693.00											
4	04/03/2022	825.00											
5	04/04/2022	5814.00											
6	05/05/2022	5377.00											
7	05/06/2022	8178.00											
8	06/07/2022	8401.00					44089.00						
9	06/08/2022	7172.00				1							
10	06/09/2022	9147.00											
11	07/10/2022	1072.00											
12	07/11/2022	3539.00											
13	08/12/2022	2651.00			=SUM((B2	2:B13)*((M	ONTH(A	2:A13)):	=(SEQU	ENCE(,K2-K1	+1,K1))	))	
14													
15													
16		SUM only	y t	ransact	ions in m	onths Ap	ril to Se	ptemb	er:				
17		6 months	st	arting <b>f</b>	from the 4	th mont	h						
18													
19													
20													

Figure 6.26: Sum only transactions from a defined sequence of months

## Conclusion

Most financial functions in Excel accept only single-value arguments and return single-value results. In this chapter, we have shown how to convert such traditional functions into multiple-result functions, thanks to the **SEQUENCE** function. Moreover, in cases where we could achieve an array of results (for example, in the **NPV** function, by using a Data table, a built-in function in Excel), we showed that this unwieldy method can be easily replaced by the **SEQUENCE** function.

In the next chapter, we will discuss some interesting implementations of **SEQUENCE** in mathematics: algebra, geometry, trigonometry and more.

## Points to remember

- SEQUENCE is extremely practical when you weigh several options, in loans or investments, looking for the optimal interest rate, loan period, periodic payment amount and so on.
- Designing your arguments cleverly can be immensely helpful when setting the increments ( $\Delta$ ) for a certain argument. For example, if you want to see the impact of every fraction of an annual interest rate (0.2%, 0.25%, 0.3%) set the increments accordingly.
- Using **Spin** buttons makes the process much faster and easier. The **Spin** buttons add an additional level of flexibility.

### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

https://discord.bpbonline.com



# CHAPTER 7 SEQUENCE -The Ancilla of Math

## Introduction

Every software is built upon binary logic, that is, numbers containing only 0s and 1s. In this sense, Excel is no exception. However, since Excel is basically a calculatory software, it also has many mathematical functions. The examples in this chapter are going to demonstrate its outstanding capabilities, both in calculations and in its graphical user interface: a visual display of the mathematical computation. This chapter mentions about two dozen examples showcasing the integration of **SEQUENCE** with mathematical functions. The illustrations cover some areas such as: algebra (fractions, sums, powers), probability, trigonometry, bit operations and more.

## Structure

In this chapter, we will discuss the following topics:

- Examples of SEQUENCE in math operations
  - A number to the power of
  - Two methods to create a sequence of square roots
  - Two methods to generate a sequence of fractions
  - Creating a sequence of alternate 1's and 0's

- o Dynamic quadratic equation
- o SUM a virtual Array
- o How many candles
- Raising the number 2 to the power of 10 using bit operation
- o Simplest OR
- o Dynamic Sine with 2 Spin Buttons
- o Exponential Growth example
- Dynamic multiplication table
- BIN2DEC MMULT and SEQUENCE
- BIN2DEC SUM (or SUMPRODUCT) with SEQUENCE
- o Filling the missing values in a geometric series
- Trigonometry with SEQUENCE
- o An array of duplicate numbers generated by bit operations
- Using MMULT and SEQUENCE to track wins, losses, and ties in each quarter
- o Digital root
- o First N odd numbers squared (A simple solution)
- First N odd numbers squared (A complex solution)
- Find first divisor of a number (divisor found)
- Find first divisor of a number (divisor not found)

## Objectives

The objective of this chapter is to show you how advantageous the use of **SEQUENCE** is when dealing with mathematical operations. Since **SEQUENCE** is an array function, it can speed up your calculations by executing several solutions concurrently. Learning these techniques will undoubtedly save you a lot of time, effort, and frustration.

# **Examples of SEQUENCE in math** operations

The ensuing examples demonstrate the implementation of **SEQUENCE** in math.

### A number to the power of

The **POWER** function in Excel yields only one solution. However, by using the **SEQUENCE** function cleverly, we can achieve multiple solution with only one formula. In the example below we use two spin buttons to make the array solution even more flexible. We can control both the numbers to be raised to the desired exponent (in cell J1) and the exponent (in cell M1) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.1: A number to the power of

The **Spin** button linked to cell J1 controls the numbers presented in column A as shown in the following screenshot:

Η	Ι	J	Κ	L		
1	numbers	8		Power		
0 0 0						
<u> </u>	Format Control				?	×
	Size Protectio	n Properties	Alt Text	Control		
	Current value: Minimum value: Magimum value: Incremental change: Page change: Cell jink: ☑ 3-D shading	8 1 20 1 1 5JS1		Ì		
				ОК	Car	ncel

Figure 7.2: The Number Spin button

The **Spin** button linked to cell M1 controls the power by which the numbers in column A are raised.

L	М		Ν		0	
Power		5		<u>م</u>	o( ▲]	2
Format Control					~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	} ×
Size Protection	Properties	Alt Text	Control			
Current value: Minimum value: Maximum value: Incremental change: Page change: Cell Jink: ☑ 3-D shading	5 0 5 ÷ 1 ÷ SMS1		Î			
			0	К	Car	ncel

Figure 7.3: The Power Spin button

# Two methods to create a sequence of square roots

The method on the left-hand side of *Figure 7.4* uses array constants. This is a static array, that is, whenever you want to increase or decrease the array's size, you need to tamper with the formula. On the right-hand side of the following figure, we have a dynamic array created, with the **SEQUENCE** function. If we want to change the array's size, all we have to do is change the parameter (in L1). We do not touch the formula as shown in the following figure:



Figure 7.4: Two methods to create a sequence of square roots

# Two methods to generate a sequence of fractions

To create an array of n fractions we need to know its size (n is 9, defined in cell E1), and the fraction itself (0.1, defined in cell E2). The first method (on the left-hand side) saves us the bother of defining the first member of the array as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.5: Two methods to create a sequence of fractions

### Creating a sequence of alternate 1's and 0's

In this section, we will use the **BITAND** function to generate a series of alternate 1's and 0's. To spawn the opposite series, we use the **NOT** operator as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.6: Creating a sequence of alternate 1's and 0's

## Dynamic quadratic equation

Here is a demonstration of the  $Y=X^2$  equation, a quadratic equation. Each value in column A (*x*) is raised to the power of 2 in column B (*y*). The size of the array is determined by a **Spin** button attached to cell P1 (in our case: 5, so the *x* axis goes from -5 to 5), as can be seen in the **SEQUENCE** function. We use a helper cell (J1) because a spin button cannot handle negative numbers as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.7: Dynamic quadratic equation

The **Spin** button linked to cell P1 determines the two extremes of the array in column A. For example, if P1 is 5 (as in our example), then the array's range is from -5 to +5:

I J K	L	М	Ν	0	Р	Q
starting -5						<b>5</b>
	<b>=</b> P1*-1					
	Format C	ontrol			?	×
	Size Current Minimur Magimur Jncremer Page chi Cell Jink Cell Jink	Protection Pr value: 5 m value: 1 m value: 1 ntal change: 1 ange: 5 shading	Alt Ter	t Control		
				ОК	Cano	cel

Figure 7.8: Dynamic quadratic equation – Spin button

### SUM - a virtual Array

The upper-part function is a demonstration of a bi-dimensional array: 4 rows by 4 columns, which starts with one and is augmented by 3. The sum function on the right then sums this array. The notation C2# is a spill range reference that refers to the entire array and not to cell C2 alone. The formula in the lower part attains the same result with a *virtual* array, that is, the array created (which is exactly the same as the previous one) exists in Excel's memory, but cannot be seen on the spreadsheet itself as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.9: SUM a virtual array

### How many candles

In the Jewish Feast of lights (which lasts eight days), we light a Hanukkiah (a ninebranched candelabrum). We start by lighting two candles on the first day and ending with nine candles in the eighth and last day of the holiday. But what if we want to add a candelabrum on each day till the last, that is, the eighth day? We will have 8 candelabras. How can we calculate the total candles needed for all the candelabras during the whole feast?

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	H	Ι
	Day	Candles needed	Candles needed						
1		for 1 candelabra	for N candelabras						
2	1	2	2						
3	2	3	6						
4	3	4	12		240				
5	4	5	20						
6	5	6	30			$\mathbf{h}$			
7	6	7	42			$\langle \rangle$			
8	7	8	56		=SUM((	SEQUENCI	E(8)+1)*(SEOU	<b>JENCE(8)))</b>	
9	8	9	72						
10			240						
11									
12									
13	The Je	wish Feast of I	Jights (Hanukka	h) las	sts 8 da	ys.			
14	On the	1st day you lig	tht 2 candles.	ĺ.		•			
15	on the	2nd - three, on	the 3rd - four e	tc.					
16	The ou	lestion.	tour o						
10	I ne qu		1.10						
17	now m	any candles do	we need, II:						
18	On the	first day you l	ight only one Ha	nukk	ciah (9-	candle can	idelabra),		
19	on the	2nd - 2 candela	abras, on the 3rd	l - 3 (	candela	bras?			
20									
21									

Figure 7.10: How many candles

# Raising the number 2 to the power of 10 using bit operation

The **BITLSHIFT** function is a bit operation which shifts to the left bit at a time. Each such shift multiplies the result by 2. Using the **SEQUENCE** function, we can dynamically create a geometric series whose size is set by the parameter in cell H1 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.11: Raising the number 2 to the tenth power using bit operation

## Simplest OR

The fastest, simplest method to check whether the value defined in cell A1 is an integer between 1 and 10 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.12: Simplest OR

## **Dynamic Sine with two Spin buttons**

The following figure displays the use of **SEQUENCE** to create a dynamic sine chart. On the left-hand side we have a table of *x*-*y* values, created dynamically with two

spin buttons. The *x*-axis values are expressed in fractions of Radians (=PI() = 180), generated by the first spin button in cell I2 and set by cell G2 (the amplitude). The distance of the chart is indicated by the second **Spin** button in cell N2:



Figure 7.13: Dynamic SINE with two Spin buttons

The **Spin** button in cell I2 sets the amplitude of the chart. Since **Spin** buttons cannot take fractions, we divide the value in H2 (the cell linked to the **Spin** button) by 10, to produce a fraction (in G2) as shown in the following screenshot:

	C	D	E	F	G	Н	I
							<u> </u>
)			Gap in I	PI()	0.3	3	
7	Format	Control				? ×	
7	Size	Protec	tion Properties	Alt Text	ontrol		
7	Currer	nt value:	3				
5	Minim	um value:	1	<b>÷</b>			
-	Maxim	um value:	10	÷			
4	Increm	iental char	nge: 1	÷			_
Ŋ	Page	hange:		÷			
7	Cell In	1K:	SH\$2		<b>1</b>		
-	<u> </u>	) shading					
4							
7							
)	1						
-							
4							
7							nction
7					ОК	Cancel	
-4	-						

Figure 7.14: Dynamic SINE – Spin Button 1 – Gap in PI()

The **Spin** button in I2 determines the number of the chart's instances (*x*-axis values) as shown in the following screenshot:

1	K	L		Μ	N	
	1	[nstan	ces	23		
	- tool					~
Cinc	Destantion	Descention	AH 7-14	Control	ſ	^
Size	Protection	Properties	AltText	Control		
Minimur	value.	23	•			
Maximu	m value:	1	-			
Increme	ntal change:	50	<ul> <li>▼</li> </ul>			
Page chi	ange:		<ul> <li>▼</li> </ul>			
Cell <u>l</u> ink		SMS2	<b>T</b>	Ť		
☑ <u>3</u> -D s	hading					

Figure 7.15: Dynamic SINE – Spin Button 2 – number of instances

### **Exponential Growth example**

*Figure 7.16* displays an array of numbers raised to the power of 2 over a period of 12 months; each value in the array is twice as large as its predecessor. The initial number is a parameter (in cell G1) as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	
						Initial	10			
1						Number				
2	Month	Income								
3	January	10								
4	February	20								
5	March	40								
6	April	80		=G1*2/	\ <mark>(SEQ</mark> I	JENCE(12,	,0,1))			
7	May	160								
8	June	320								
9	July	640								
10	August	1280								
11	September	2560								
12	October	5120								
13	November	10240								
14	December	20480								
15										
16	Exponential Growth Example									
17						<b>^</b>				
18										

Figure 7.16: Exponential growth example

## **Dynamic multiplication table**

The dynamic multiplication table shown below is controlled by two parameters which decide its horizontal (cell Q1) and vertical size (cell Q2):



Figure 7.17: Dynamic multiplication table

## **BIN2DEC – MMULT and SEQUENCE**

The following figure demonstrates a method of converting a binary number (in A1) into a decimal number. The formula makes use of the MMULT function. This function returns the matrix product of two arrays: the array of the input's digits and the array of the descending numbers: 7,6....1, raised to the power of 2 as shown in the following screenshot:

The first array (of the input digits) returned by: *MID*(*A*1,*SEQUENCE*(,*LEN*(*A*1)),1)\*1 is: {1,1,1,1,1,1,1}

The second one is the array of two raised to the power of the following numbers: 7,6,5,4,3,2,1,0. These digits represent the location of the digits within the original string, from left to right. We start from 7 (not from 8) because the value of number in the n-th place, is:  $2^{(n-1)}$ .

So, the array generated by (2^(LEN(A1)-SEQUENCE(LEN(A1)))) is: {128;64;32;16;8;4;2;1}

The multiplication of the horizontal array by the vertical array yields the desired result 255 as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.18: BIN2DEC – MMULT and SEQUENCE

# **BIN2DEC - SUM (or SUMPRODUCT) with SEQUENCE**

This solution is similar to the previous one, but here we will take advantage of the **SUM** or **SUMPRODUCT** function instead of the **MMULT** function as shown in the following screenshot.

This solution is identical to the previous one (*Figure 7.18*). The only difference is that here we use **SUMPRODUCT** instead of **MMULT**:



Figure 7.19: BIN2DEC – SUM (or SUMPRODUCT) and SEQUENCE

### Filling the missing values in a geometric series

Suppose you have amounts of money spread over twelve months. You need to know the exact amount for each month, but all you know are the extremes in column B: the amounts of January (smallest) and December (largest). You know that the sum grows exponentially (thus creating a geometric series). The formula in B3 calculates the ratio of the series (the series grows by the power of 2) and correctly loads the amounts of the missing months:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J	Κ	
1	Month	Income										
2	January	450										
3	February	900										
4	March	1800										
5	April	3600										
6	May	7200										
7	June	14400										
8	July	28800										
9	August	57600		=B2*((	B13/B2)	)^(1/(12-	1)))^SI	EQUEN	CE(10)			
10	September	115200										
11	October	230400		Filling	g the n	nissing	value	s in a g	eometi	ric series		
12	November	460800		(exponential growth), by finding the ratio (n).								
13	December	921600		No. of terms: 12, 1st term (a <sub>1</sub> =450),								
14				last term (a <sub>12</sub> =921600)								
15				$921600 = 450 \times n^{(12-1)}$								
16				$n^{11} = 921600/450 = 2048$								
17				$\mathbf{n} = 2048^{(1/11)} = 2$								
18												

Figure 7.20: Filling the missing values in a geometric series

## **Trigonometry with SEQUENCE**

*Figure 7.21* presents two trigonometric functions in Excel: SIN() and COS() through a full cycle (360°).

On the left-hand side the table of numeric values for each function is displayed. It is presented in degrees, according to the parameter specified in cell M1.

On the right-hand side a graphical exposition of this cycle can be seen as shown in the following screenshot.

Please pay attention to the notation of the formulae in cells: B2 and C2.

The # in the A2# denotes the Spilled Range Operator. A2# is the array created by the formula in cell A2:



Figure 7.21: Trigonometry with SEQUENCE

# An array of duplicate numbers generated by bit operations

Suppose you have a vertical array of consecutive numbers, but you want to duplicate each member of the array. This can easily be done with BIT operations. The **SEQUENCE** function creates a 14-member array starting with 2 and ending with 15. The **BITXOR** function converts every odd number to even, and vice versa. Finally, the **BITRSHIFT** divides each number by 2, returning the correct answer as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.22: An array of duplicate numbers generated by bit operations

# Using MMULT and SEQUENCE to track wins, losses, and ties in each quarter

This formula was inspired by the legendary Frankens Team.

The challenge is this: we have a data set of our football team, which competed in many games over a period of several months. Each entry specifies the number of wins, losses, and ties for that month. But sometimes, we have more than one entry per month. We want to analyze the data by the quarter: how many wins, losses and ties do we have in each quarter. The formula uses the MMULT function: the dates in column A are converted to the year's quarters and are compared to the relevant quarter. This creates an array of **TRUEs** and **FALSEs** which is then multiplied by the games results (cells B2:D15), that yields the correct outcome as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.23: Using MMULT and SEQUENCE to track wins, losses, and ties in each quarter

## Digital root

The digital root is the process by which you take a number and add all its digits (iteratively) until you are left with only one digit. There are, of course, several algorithms to solve this challenge. This solution was devised before Microsoft introduced LAMBDA and its auxiliary functions.

The algorithm implemented here is that the whole process does not require more than two steps, as illustrated in the examples: The process can end in one step (for example: 440 -> 4 + 4 + 0 -> 8) or two. If it ends in two steps, then in case the result at the end of step two is two digits (for example: 2345678 -> 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 4 + 6 + 7 + 8 -> step 1: 39 -> 3 + 9 -> step 3: 12), we subtract 9 from the result, so the solution has only one digit (12 - 9 = 3) as shown in the following screenshot:
A	В	С	D	Е	F	G	н	I	J	K	I
1	Number		Sum of the Number's digits		"breaking" the number's digits	step 1	step 2	desidered result			
2	90456		6		9+0+4+5+6	-> 24	-> 2+4	-> 6			
3	21		1 3		2+1	-> 3		-> 3			
4	89940438048		3		8+9+9+4+0+4+3+8+0+4+8	-> 57	-> (5+7)-9	-> 3			
5	1899		9		1+8+9+9	-> 27	-> 2+7	-> 9			
6	23454678		3		2+3+4+5+4+ 6+7+8	-> 39	-> (3+9)-9	-> 3			
7	7865432989		7		7+8+6+5+4+3+2+9+8+9	-> 61	-> 6+1	-> 7			
8	9999999999		9		9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9	-> 90	-> 9+0	-> 9			
9	9999999999999999999		9		9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9	-> 135	-> 1+3+5	-> 9			
10	9999999999959998		4		9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+9+5+9+9+9+8	-> 130	-> 1+3+0	-> 4			
11											
12											
13 <mark>=L</mark>	ET(x,SUM(IFERROR	(MID	(B2,SEQUENCE(I	LEN(I	B2)),1),0)),y,SUM(MID(x,SEQUENCI	E(LEN(x)	),1)),IF(LEN	(x)=1,x,IF(y>9	(y-9,y))	,	
14											
15			Sum all of a nu	ımbe	er's digits to one digit only.						
16			This process c	an ei	id un in one sten.						
17			for example: 2	1	2+1 > 3 (a one digit result)						
17			Det complet 2	1	2+1 -> 5 (a one-digit result).						
18			But sometimes	s you	need 2 steps, for example:						
19			1899 -> 1+8+9	)+9 ->	> 27-> 2+7-> 9 (a 2-digit result).						
20			Now you sum	up th	e digits again:						
21			if the sum exce	eeds	9, you subtract 9 from the result						

Figure 7.24: Digital root

## First n odd numbers squared (A simple solution)

We can easily list the squares of the first n odd natural numbers (n is a parameter in cell G1) with this simple formula. In our example, we display the squares of the first 10 odd positive integers as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.25: First n odd numbers squared (a simple solution)

# First N odd numbers squared (A complex solution)

A more complex solution to the challenge presented in the previous section (see *Figure 7.25*) is manifested in the following figure. The **SEQUENCE(2\*g1,,0)** creates a sequence of 20 numbers, starting from 0 up to 19. The multiplication of **BITOR** of the array with **BITXOR** of the array engenders an array of alternate odd and even numbers. What is interesting about this array is that the numbers in the odd locations of the array are the numbers we are looking for, that is, an array of squares of the first n odd natural numbers. All that is left for us to do is to get rid of the even numbers of the array by the **FILTER** function which includes only the odd numbers (numbers that leave a remainder of 1 when divided by 2) as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 7.26: First n odd numbers squared (a complex solution)

## Find first divisor of a number (divisor found)

In the following section we are going to demonstrate a method to find the first divisor of a number given in a parameter (cell G1). The divisor must be an integer between 2 and 10. We skip the divisor 1, since every number is divisible by 1. One can, of course, extend the range of divisors by changing the first argument of the **SEQUENCE** function (10) to any desired number.

We first find all the remainders of the corresponding divisors (in cells A2:A10), and then find that the first 0 (which means that the dividend (in G1) is divisible by that number without any remainder).

In our example, the first divisor of 150 is 2. The **MATCH** function finds the first 0 and then we add 1 to the result, since our first divisor was 2 and not 1 as shown in *Figure* 7.27.

The **SEQUENCE(9,,2)** returns the array: {2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10}

The **MOD(G1, SEQUENCE(9,,2))** returns the array of numbers in the range: A2:A10.

Each 0 in that range signifies the fact that the number (in cell G1) is divisible (with no remainder) by that number. Since our **SEQUENCE** array starts with 2 (because, as stated above, every number is divisible by 1), the first divisor of the number in cell G1 is 2. Therefore, we add 1 to the result of the **MATCH** function, which finds the first 0 in the array A2:A10:



Figure 7.27: Find first divisor of a number (example 1)

## Find first divisor of a number (divisor not found)

This example is similar to the one shown in the preceding section. However, here we could not find a divisor in the defined range (2-10). In such cases, we need to cater to errors. Therefore, the result here is **not found**, that is, the dividend in cell G1 (151) is

not divisible by any number in the range defined within the **SEQUENCE** function: the 9 integers from 2 to 10:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K	L	Μ
1						dividend	151						
2	1		not found										
3	1												
4	3												
5	1												
6	1			=IFER	ROR(N	IATCH(0,M	<b>OD(G1,</b>	SEQUE	NCE(9,	,2)),0)+1	,"not fo	und")	
7	4												
8	7												
9	7												
10	1												
11													
12													
13													
14													
15													
16													

Figure 7.28: Find first divisor of a number (example 2)

## Conclusion

In this chapter, we have described and presented many formulae that integrate the **SEQUENCE** function with the domain of mathematics. To name a few mathematical fields employed in the examples:

- Square roots
- Fractions
- Exponentiation
- Bit operations
- Trigonometry
- Geometric series
- Multiplication table
- Conversion of binary into decimal
- Matrix product of arrays
- Digital root

In the next chapter, we shall discuss the implementation of **SEQUENCE** in more complex challenges. For example, how to implement **SEQUENCE** in data validation of text (certain sequence of characters in an alphabet), how to use **SEQUENCE** in a more flexible method than the traditional nested IF, how to calculate the check digit of a

number using the Luhn algorithm and more. We will also demonstrate how to carry out Excel challenges with the **LAMBDA** function.

## Points to remember

- **SEQUENCE** is essential when working with series, either arithmetic or geometric.
- It is very convenient to use it in trigonometric functions, especially if we want to unfold the visual manifestation of these functions.
- Multiplication of arrays (or matrix products of arrays) can be achieved by combining **SEQUENCE** with the **MMULT** function.
- Bit operation functions in tandem with **SEQUENCE** can produce results that might be difficult to achieve in alternative attitudes.
- **SEQUENCE** is also very handy in dealing with other mathematical *entities*: fractions, power operations, divisibility, and so on.

### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

https://discord.bpbonline.com



# CHAPTER 8 SEQUENCE and Other Animals

## Introduction

This is the book's last chapter. It consists of some more complex examples of using **SEQUENCE** under various challenges in Excel. Some of them will explain in detail the use of the newest and most challenging functions in Excel 365: the **LAMBDA** function and some of its helper functions.

## Structure

This chapter will demonstrate the application of new concepts with the assistance of **SEQUENCE**:

- Examples of **SEQUENCE** with other animals
  - Better than nested **IF**
  - Fetch the first and last digits from a string
  - Data validation only Hebrew letters
  - Data validation only uppercase English letters
  - Splitting cell by chunk size and separator (two examples)
  - Remove all digits from string

- o Remove names and split numbers to separate cells
- Removing "A", "B" and "C" from string Two methods
- INDEX-SQRT instead of FILTER
- o Remove all uppercase or lowercase letters from string
- Verifying the validity of a check digit with the Luhn algorithm

## Objectives

The objective of this chapter is to show you the advantage of using **SEQUENCE** when dealing with complex operations. As you already know, since **SEQUENCE** is an array function, it can speed up your calculations by executing several solutions concurrently. Learning these techniques will undoubtedly save you a lot of time, and effort.

# Examples of SEQUENCE with other animals

The following examples manifest the versatility of **SEQUENCE** in conjunction with other functions to effectuate dynamic solutions in complicated problems.

## Better than nested IF

This section will demonstrate the difference between the old, *traditional* nested IF function and the more flexible and sophisticated combination of **XLOOKUP** and **SEQUENCE**. The example chosen is conversion of grade points (0-100) to marks (1-5).

### Traditional solution – nested IF

We are all familiar with the IF function and its younger sister, IFS (introduced in Excel 2019). This function is perhaps the most used function in Excel, neck to neck with **SUM** and **VLOOKUP**. Here is an example of utilizing nested IF in translating grade points (numbers) to marks (scale of numbers from 1 to 5). The table on the left-hand side depicts the conversion rules to be implemented in the formula. One can clearly see that the nested **if** is both lengthy and inflexible, which makes it hard to debug as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 8.1: Converting grade points to marks (nested if)

A different attitude is presented in the next three examples. The implementation of the conversion rules is dynamic since both the gaps between the grades and the marks scale – are dynamic (in parameters): you can change the number of marks (see example 2) and see the impact. Of course, you can change the highest score and the result will adapt itself to the new *upper limit* of the grades (as can be seen in the third example).

## XLOOKUP and SEQUENCE instead of nested IF (example 1)

First, we check to see that only valid entries were keyed in the score field (cell E1): a number not greater than the highest score (in this example it is 100, but we shall see in the next example a different *highest score* and how the flexibility of the formula caters for such cases).

XLOOKUP's first argument is, of course, the score to be *translated* (cell E1).

The second argument to the **XLOOKUP** function:

**SEQUENCE(,K1,N1-(N1/K1)+1,-(N1/K1))** yields the array {1,21,41,61,81}

The expression: (N1/K1) determines the size of each *scale*: we divide the highest grade (100, in cell N1) by the number of marks (5, in cell K1): 100/5 = 20. So, each mark is equivalent to 20 grade points.

The third argument to the **XLOOKUP** function:

**SEQUENCE(,K1,K1,-1)** produces the array {5,4,3,2,1} according to the number of marks (cell K1).

**XLOOKUP**'s fourth argument tells the formula what to do in cases of errors, like, if the number entered in E1 is negative.

The fifth and last argument in our formula (since we skip the sixth one) defines the match mode. Its value (-1) tells Excel to find the exact match or the next smallest item. In our case, since there is no exact match, Excel returns the last smallest match: 56 between the third and fourth members of the array that we created in the second argument of **XLOOKUP** ({1,21,41,61,81}):41<56<61. So, **XLOOKUP**'s result is: 3. (The table on the left-hand side is displayed only for clarification):



Figure 8.2: Converting grade points to marks (a more flexible attitude – example 1)

## XLOOKUP and SEQUENCE instead of nested IF (example 2)

The same formula used in the previous example is implemented here. The only difference made is that we now want a scale of only four marks (1:4). The formula: =IF(AND(ISNUMBER(E1),E1<=N1),XLOOKUP(E1,SEQUENCE(,K1,N1-(N1/K1)+1,-(N1/K1)),SEQUENCE(,K1,K1,-1),0,-1,),0) applies this change effortlessly.

Here, the second argument to the **XLOOKUP** function is:

**SEQUENCE(,K1,N1-(N1/K1)+1,-(N1/K1))** which yields the array {1,26,51,76}

and the third argument to the **XLOOKUP** function is:

**SEQUENCE(,K1,K1,-1)** which produces the array {4, 3, 2, 1}

Since the score (56) falls between 51 and 76, **XLOOKUP** returns the corresponding mark: 3 (in the third location). (The table on the left-hand side is displayed for clarification):



Figure 8.3: Converting grade points to marks (a more flexible attitude – example 2)

## XLOOKUP and SEQUENCE instead of nested IF (example 3)

In our third and last example, we will change the highest possible score to 70. The formula adapts itself flawlessly to the new range. (The table on the left-hand side is displayed for clarification):



*Figure 8.4*: Converting grade points to marks (a more flexible attitude – example 3)

## Fetch the first and last digits from a string

The formula depicted in cell B3 *Figure 8.5* extracts the first and the last digits from the string in A3. If there are at least two digits in A3, the first and the last digits are extracted into cells B3 and C3, accordingly. If only one digit is found (for example,

in cell A7), cell C7 is left empty. If no digits were found (cell A5), both A5 and C5 are empty.

Follow these steps for fetching the first and last digits from a string:

- 1. Remove all non-digits from the string. Only digits are extracted and concatenated by the **TEXTJOIN** function. (result: "0456")
- 2. A " " is suffixed to the first extracted digit (which is 0 and the result is "0")
- 3. If the length of the string created in *Step 1* is greater than 1 (it is), then the last digit of the string in *Step 1* is extracted (the digit: 6)
- 4. The result of *Step 2* is concatenated to the result of *Step 3* (result: "0 6")
- 5. **TEXTSPLIT** splits the string created in *Step 4* ("0 6") by the delimiter (" "), thus returning the final result in cells B3 and C3:



Figure 8.5: Fetch the first and the last digits from a mixed string

### **Data validation – only Hebrew letters**

The technique used here allows only Hebrew letters in the data validation cell (B1). More than that, we can limit the range of allowed letters. If you enter in B1, any letter greater than the upper limit (parameter in cell G1) or smaller than the lower limit (parameter in F1), the result is **FALSE** as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Η	I	J	K	L	Μ	N	0	Р	Q
1		אבג				R	ډ										
2																	
3																	
4		TRUE															
5																	
6																	
7				=LET(	a,CODI	E <mark>(MID</mark> (	B1,SE	QUEN	CE(LEI	N(B1),1)	,1)),AN	D(a>=COI	DE(F1),	a<=COD	<b>E(G1)))</b>		
8																	
9																	
10																	
11			Data V		lon wi	IL OT	OUE	NCE.	Enton	only I	[abuar	Lattona					
12			Data v	anuat	IOH WI	II SE	QUL	NCE:	Enter	ошу п	leprew	Letters					
13			You ca	in evei	ı furth	er lin	ait th	e allov	ved rai	ige of I	letters	in B1					
14			In our	examj	ple, if y	you er	iter H	lebrev	v letter	's outsi	ide the						
15			range	specifi	ed in H	1:G1	(i.e. )	not be	tween	these e	extrem	es)					
16			you ge	t a "F	ALSE'	' resu	lt										
17																	
18																	
19																	

*Figure 8.6*: Data validation – only Hebrew letters

The rule applied in the data validation can be seen in the following figure. The **CODE** function converts the ASCII character into its numeric value, so that every character is checked to make sure it is valid. The full formula can be seen in *Figure 8.6*:

Data Validation	?	×
Settings Input Message Error Alert		
Validation criteria		
Allow:		
Custom VIgnore blank		
Data:		
between 🗸		
Eormula:		
= LET (a, CODE (MID (B1, SEQUENCE (LEN (B1), 1), 1)), AI		
Apply these changes to all other cells with the same	settings	
<u>C</u> lear All OK	Car	ncel

Figure 8.7: Data validation – only Hebrew letters (the rule)

### **Data validation – only uppercase English letters**

This solution is similar to the one applied in the previous example. Here, we will check that only uppercase English letters are entered in cell B1. Again, we employ the same rule: the letters entered should not be below "A" (parameter in F1) or above "Z" (parameter in G1). If you enter letters outside this range, the formula returns: **FALSE**.

As in the previous example, we display the rule defined in the data validation pane. The full formula can be seen in the following figure (D7):



Figure 8.8: Data validation – only uppercase English letters

The full formula can be seen in *Figure 8.8* (cell D7). The following screenshot depicts the Data Validation rule applied:

Custom v Ignore blank Data: between v Eormula: =LET(a,CODE(MID(B1,SEQUENCE(LEN(B1), 1), 1)),AI 1	alidation criteria		
Data: between Formula: =LET(a,CODE(MID(B1,SEQUENCE(LEN(B1), 1), 1)),AI 1	Custom	→ ✓ Ignore <u>b</u> lank	
Eormula: =LET(a,CODE(MID(B1,SEQUENCE(LEN(B1),1),1)),AI	Data:		
Eormula: =LET (a, CODE (MID (B1, SEQUENCE (LEN (B1), 1), 1)), AI	between	$\sim$	
=LET(a,CODE(MID(B1,SEQUENCE(LEN(B1),1),1)),AI	<u>F</u> ormula:		
	=LET(a,CODE(MID(B1	SEQUENCE(LEN(B1), 1), 1)), AI	1

*Figure 8.9*: Data validation – only uppercase English letters (the rule)

## Splitting cell by chunk size and separator (two examples)

Suppose we have a string in a cell, and we want to split it by a separator into equal "chunks". The chunk size is defined in cell G1, and the separator is defined in cell I1. The technique is demonstrated in the next figure.

Explanation of the formula can be implemented through the following steps:

- 1. The **TEXTJOIN** function, which *wraps* the **MID** function creates the following string: "AB/CD/EF/GH/I////".
- 2. The **FIND** function searches for the location of A3's last character ("I") within the result in *Step 1* and returns: 13. This is the length of the string we are looking for: the string created by the **TEXTJOIN** without the additional separator characters at the end.
- 3. The **LEFT** function returns only the first 13 characters of cell A3. In cell C4 we can see a practical utilization of this technique: the number in cell A4 is converted to: 12/02/20 which is a valid date. If we multiply C4 by 1 (to convert the string to a number), the result (in E4) will be a valid Excel date:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K
1						Chunk Size	2	Separator	1		
2	Before		After								
3	ABIDEFGHI		AB/ID/EF/GH/I								
4	120220		12/02/20		43873						
5	TicTacToer		Ti/cT/ac/To/er								
6	abcdefgh		ab/cd/ef/gh								
7	abcdefghijk		ab/cd/ef/gh/ij/k								
8											
9											
10	=LET(x,TEXTJ	OIN("	""MID(A3,SEQUENC	CE(LE	N(A3))*\$	<mark>G\$1-(\$G\$1-1</mark> )	<mark>,\$G\$1)</mark> &	2 <mark>\$1\$1),LEFT</mark>	(x,FIND(R	IGHT(A3),x,LEN(A3))))	
11											
12											
13											
14											
15	Split cell by c	hunk	size and separato	r							
16											
17	Chunk size:	Afte	r how many chara	icters	should	the separat	or be i	mplemente	d		
18	Separator:	One	character that sep	parate	es betwe	en chunks					
19											
20	This formula	does	n't add a separato	r as a	last cha	racter					
21											

Figure 8.10: Split cell by chunk size and separator (example 1)

Another example demonstrates the flexibility of the solution. Here, the separator is composed of two characters, not just one:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	K
1						<b>Chunk Size</b>	3	Separator			
2	Before		After								
3	ABIDEFGHI		ABI//DEF//GHI								
4	120220		120//220								
5	TicTacToer		Tic//Tac//Toe//r								
6	abcdefgh		abc//def//gh								
7	abcdefghijk		abc//def//ghi//jk								
8											
9											
10	=LET(x,TEXTJ	DIN("	""MID(A3,SEQUEN	CE(LE	N(A3))*\$	<mark>G\$1-(\$G\$1-1</mark> ]	<mark>,\$G\$1)&amp;</mark>	\$I\$1),LEFT(	x,FIND(R	IGHT(A3),x,LEN(A3))))	
11											
12											
13											
14											
15	Split cell by cl	hunk	size and separato	r							
16											
17	Chunk size:	Afte	r how many chara	icters	should	the separat	or be ii	nplemente	d		
18	Separator:	Two	characters that s	epara	te betwe	en chunks					
19											
20	This formula	does	n't add a separato	r as a	last cha	aracter					
21											

Figure 8.11: Split cell by chunk size and separator (example 2)

## Remove all digits from string

This solution combines two new functions: LAMBDA and a helper function, REDUCE.

The **REDUCE** is an *ancillary* function, which means that it cannot operate independently. It can be implemented only in conjunction with **LAMBDA**.

The **SEQUENC(10,,0)** creates an array of the digits: 0-9. The **LAMBDA** function then removes these digits from the string, replacing them with null by using the **SUBSTITUTE** function:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι	J
1	Before		After							
2	123abc123		abc							
3	v1c2d3r5y78u		vcdryu							
4										
5										
6										
7										
8	=REDUCE(A2,	SEQUE	NCE(10,,0),LA	MBDA(x	,y,SUB	STITUI	E(x,y,"	")))		
9										
10										
11										
12										
13		Remov	ve all digits f	ro <mark>m st</mark> i	ring					
14										
15										
16										
1/										

Figure 8.12: Remove all digits from string

# Remove names and split numbers to separate cells

The main two functions (LAMBDA and its **helper** function: **REDUCE**) create a *stack* of all ASCII non-numeric characters (1:47, 58:255):

The **CHAR(SEQUENCE(47,,1))** creates an array of all the ASCII characters preceding the first digit (CHAR(48) which is 0) and all the ASCII characters following the last digit (CHAR(57) which is 9): **CHAR(SEQUENCE(198,,58))**.

Then, all these characters are removed from the original string and are replaced by " ".

We are left with only numbers, separated by spaces. The **TEXTSPLIT** then splits these numbers by the separator (" "), which leaves us with the three numbers as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	н	I	J	K	L	М	Ν	0	Р	
1																	
2	John1234Cecilia5678Maria90567																
3																	
4																	
5		1234	5678	90567													
6																	
7																	
8																	
9	=TEXTSPLIT(TRIM(REDUCE	(A2,VST	ACK(CH	IAR(SEC	<b>UENC</b>	E(47,,1)	,CHAR(S	EQUEN	<b>CE(198</b>	,,58))),L	AMBDA	(a,b,SU	BSTIT	UTE(a	, <b>b," "</b> )	)))," ")	
10																	
11																	
12	Remove names and split n	umbers	into se	parate	cells												
13	Using 4 advanced 365 fund	ctions:															
14	1) TEXTSPLIT																
15	2) SEQUENCE																
16	3) VSTACK																
17	4) LAMBDA with its helpe	e <mark>r func</mark> ti	ion: RF	DUCE													
18																	
19																	
20																	

Figure 8.13: Remove names and split numbers into separate consecutive cells

## Removing "A", "B" and "C" from string – two methods

The idea here is to remove the first three uppercase English letters from a string.

This solution combines two new functions: LAMBDA and a helper function: REDUCE.

**REDUCE** is an *ancillary* function, which means that it cannot operate independently. It can be implemented only in conjunction with **LAMBDA**.

### Method 1

In this solution, the values to be removed are hard coded within the formula, which is not an ideal solution as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F
1	Before	After				
2	ABC123	123				
3	AB123CC	123				
4	124ABCCA	124				
5	98A47B509C	9847509				
6	888A	888				
7						
8						
9						
10		=REDUCE(A2,{"A","B	","C"},LAMBDA(x,y,S	UBSTITUTE(x,y,	"")))	
11						
12						
13						
14	Remove all "A","	B","C" from string				
15	"hard-coded" wit	hin the formula				
16						
17						
18						
19						

Figure 8.14: Removing "A", "B", "C" from string – method 1

### Method 2

This is a better implementation of the problem posed in the previous figure. Instead of hard-coded values, we use two parameters: the first one specifies the first letter to remove, and the second defines the number of alphabetic characters to remove. In our case we have three, which means that the formula is supposed to eliminate the first three lowercase alphabet letters.

This solution also uses LAMBDA and REDUCE.

It accepts two arguments:

- 1. The first one is the initial value (in our case, it is the entire string in A2) and
- The second is the expression: CHAR(SEQUENCE(\$J\$1,,CODE(\$E\$1),1) which yields the array of three characters: "a"; "b"; "c"

These are *fed* into the **LAMBDA** function which removes the occurrence of any character of the second argument from the first argument.

The result: A string *stripped off* from the letters specified in the parameters.

This solution is dynamic, because:

- You can start with any letter you want
- You may specify any number of consecutive letters, starting with the letter defined in the first argument.

Since we start with *a*, the formula will remove the first three lowercase letters, as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	I	J	К
1	Before	After		starting from	a		number	of chai	racters to remove	3	
2	abd123	d123									
3	ab123cc	123									
4	cd124abcca	d124									
5	98aA47bB509cC	98A47B509C									
6	888A	888A									
7											
8											
9					CUDOT						
10	=REDUCE(A2,CHAI	R(SEQUENCE(\$J\$1,,CO	DE(\$E\$1),	1)),LAMBDA(x,y	y,SUBSTI	TU.	l E(x,y,''	')))			
11											
13											
14	Remove n first lov	wercase/uppercase le	tters								
15	using parameters	for a flexible solution	n.								
16	You can select bo	th the first letter to e	liminate								
17	and also the num	ber of consecutive let	tters.								
18											
19											
20											

Figure 8.15: Removing three first lowercase letters from string – method 2

## **INDEX-SQRT** instead of FILTER

In cells A3:C10 we have a data set of songs and composers. Each combination of song and composer has one unique SKU. In cells G3:G10, we need to find the SKU that matches the song (in E3:E10) and the composer (F3:F10).

Of course, the simplest method would be using the **FILTER** function:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	Н	1	J	к
1											
2	Song	Composer	SKU		Song	Composer	SKU				
3	Peace	John Lennon	10123		Garden	John Denver	not found				
4	Peace	John Denver	10124		Longing	Louis Armstrong	20343				
5	Love	John Lennon	10125		Peace	John Denver	10124	$\mathbf{X}$			
6	Love	Shania Twain	10126		Love	John Lennon	10125				
7	Garden	Shania Twain	10127		Love	Shania Twain	10126				
8	Garden	Keith Jarret	10128		Garden	Shania Twain	10127		$\mathbf{N}$		
9	Longing	Louis Armstrong	20343		Longing	John Denver	32038				
10	Longing	John Denver	32038		Peace	John Lennon	10123				
11										$\mathbf{N}$	
12										$\mathbf{N}$	
13											
14	=IFERR	OR(FILTER(\$C	\$3:\$C\$	10,(E3=	=\$A\$3:\$A	.\$10)*(F3=\$B\$3:\$]	<mark>B\$10)),''not</mark> :	found	<b>I</b> ")		
15											
16											
17		using FILTE	R to g	et the	SKU (ii	n column C)					
18		for the song a	nd co	mpose	er in (co	lumns E. F res	pectively)				
19		8									

Figure 8.16: Using FILTER to get the SKU for the song and composer (columns E,F)

But, we have devised an alternative solution which uses the **SEQUENCE** function in tandem with **INDEX** and **SQRT**. You might wonder that **SQRT** is a mathematical function that has nothing to do with search functions. How is that possible?

Let us check it first on cell G3 and then on cell G4.

In cell G3, the product: **(\$A\$3:\$A\$10=E3)\*(\$B\$3:\$B\$10=F3)** yields 0. This happened because in the original data set, there is no SKU for the song *Garden* whose composer is *John Denver*. So, the formula returns: *not found*.

In cell G4, the product: **(\$A\$3:\$A\$10=E4)\*(\$B\$3:\$B\$10=F4)** yields 1, because the combination of the song *Longing* composed by *Louis Armstrong* was found in column C. We need to find on which row (within the range: C3:C10) this combination exists. The expression:

**SQRT(SUM(a^2\*s))** is the crux of the formula.

**a^2** is the expression. **SEQUENCE(8)** raised to the second power, produces the following array: {1;4;9;16;25;36;49;64}. This element is multiplied by **(\$A\$3:\$A\$10=E4)\*(\$B\$3:\$B\$10=F4)** whose result is: {0;0;0;0;0;0;0;1;0} because this combination was found on the seventh row. The sum of these two arrays is: 49. Now, what is left for us to do is find the **SQRT** of the number: 7. So, the **INDEX** function fetches the 7th element in C3:C10, which is: 20343. The **SQRT** serves here as a replacement for **MATCH** as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	E	F	G	н	1	J	K	L	м	N	0	Р	Q	R	S	т	ĺ
1																					
2	Song	Composer	SKU		Song	Composer	SKU														
з	Peace	John Lennon	10123		Garden	John Denver	not found														
4	Peace	John Denver	10124		Longing	Louis Armstrong	20343														
5	Love	John Lennon	10125		Peace	John Denver	10124	$\mathbf{X}$													
6	Love	Shania Twain	10126		Love	John Lennon	10125	<u></u>													
7	Garden	Shania Twain	10127		Love	Shania Twain	10126		$\mathbf{X}$												
8	Garden	Keith Jarret	10128		Garden	Shania Twain	10127														
9	Longing	Louis Armstrong	20343		Longing	John Denver	32038														
10	Longing	John Denver	32038		Peace	John Lennon	10123			$\mathbf{X}$											
11																					
12																					ļ
13	=LET(a,	SEQUENCE(COU	J <mark>NTA(\$</mark>	A\$3:\$A	<mark>(\$10)),s,(</mark>	\$A\$3:\$A\$10=E3)*	(SB\$3:SB\$10	<b>=F3</b> )	,IF(SU	J <b>M(</b> :	s),IND	EX(SC	\$3:\$C	<mark>\$10,</mark> 8	SQRT(	(SUM	[a^2*s]	)),),"n	ot foun	ıd"))	l
14																					
15																					
16		INDEX-SQR	<u> </u>	ad of	FILTE	R															
17																					
18																					
19																					
20																					

Figure 8.17: INDEX-SQRT instead of FILTER

# Remove all uppercase or lowercase letters from string

This solution combines the **LAMBDA** and **REDUCE** functions in a similar manner to the examples in *Figure 8.11* to *Figure 8.14*.

The **REDUCE** function accepts two arguments:

- The first one is the initial value (in our case, it is the entire string in A2).
- The second argument is the expression:

**CHAR(SEQUENCE(26,\$E\$2,1)** which generates all the uppercase English letters (if cell E1 is "A") or all the lowercase letters (if cell E1 contains "a").

The **LAMBDA** function then removes every occurrence of the 26 uppercase letters starting from "A", the first argument in cell E1. The result string in cell A2 is "stripped off" from its uppercase letters.

This solution is dynamic, because you can choose whether to get rid of only the uppercase letters or the lowercase letters too as shown in the following screenshot:

	А	В	С	D	Е	F	G	Н	Ι
1	Before	After		Letter	Α				
2	ABC1D2E3F	123		ASCII Code	65				
3	AB12J3CMNC	123							
4	124ABCCA	124							
5	98A47B50K9TC	9847509					=CODF	(E1)	
6	8ZZZ88A	888							
7									
8									
9									
10		=REDUCE(A2,CHAR	R(SEQUENCE(26,,SE\$2	,1)),LAMBDA(x,y	,SUBST	ITUTE	(x,y,""))	)	
11									
12									
13		D 11		0					
14		Remove all upper	case English letters	from string					
15		Using LAMBDA							
16									
17		If you want to ren	nove only lowercase	<b>English letters</b>					
18		change cell E1 fro	m: A to: a						
19									
20									

Figure 8.18: Remove all uppercase or lowercase letters from string

# Verifying the validity of a check digit with the Luhn algorithm

The chapter's last example will demonstrate the implementation of the Luhn algorithm to verify the check digit of a 9-digit number, whose last digit is the check digit.

The algorithm is computed as follows:

Each even-place digit is multiplied by 2. If the result is greater than 9, we add the two digits that make up the result. For example, if the original digit was 6 and we multiplied it by 2, the result is 12. Since this number is greater than 9, we add the two digits: 1+2=3.

No calculation is executed on the odd-place digits. At the end of this computation, we sum up all the results. If the result is divisible by 10 without any remainder, then the check digit (9th digit) is correct as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 8.19: The Luhn algorithm applied to verify the check digit of the ID no. in cell B1

The next figure will explain the three steps of the process:

- 1. Extracting the even-place digits (2<sup>nd</sup>, 4<sup>th</sup>, 6<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> digits) (in C4#) and the odd-place digits (1<sup>st</sup>, 3<sup>rd</sup>, 5<sup>th</sup>, 7<sup>th</sup>, 9<sup>th</sup> digits) (in C12#)
- 2. Each even-place digit is multiplied by 2 (see explanation above). If any digit in the array of the even-place digits is greater than 4, then the product will be 10 or more. In such cases, we add 1 to the remainder of division of this number to 10 (which is the same as adding these two digits).

For example, if the original digit was 6 and we multiplied it by 2, the result is: 12. Since this number is greater than 9, we add the two digits: 1+2=3.

For example: 5, the first even-place digit, is greater than 4. so, we multiply it by 2 ( $5^{2}=10$ ), find the remainder of division by 10 (=0, no remainder) and then add 1. (0+1=1).

Another example: 6, the second even-place digit, is also greater than 4. So, we multiply it by 2 ( $6^{2}=10$ ), find the remainder of division by 10 (=2) and then add 1. (2+1=3). Then, we sum the 4 results of all 4 even-place digits (1+3+2+6)=12.

The odd-place digits are *summed* without calculation: (0+1+5+6+6)=18.

3. We now *combine* the 2 sums: 12+18 = 30 and divide the total sum (30) by 10. If there is no remainder, then the number is a valid ID number according to the Luhn algorithm:



Figure 8.20: The three steps of the algorithm implemented in the formula

## Conclusion

In this chapter you learnt some advanced uses of **SEQUENCE** with other Excel 365 functions (for example LAMBDA with its helper functions: SCAN and REDUCE). Besides that, some sophisticated solutions with **SEQUENCE** (for example, the use of **INDEX-SQRT** instead of **FILTER**, or the implementation of the Luhn algorithm to verify an ID no, check digit's validity – in one formula) were demonstrated.

In this book, we covered a huge scope of the **SEQUENCE** function in various Excel categories: text, numbers, arrays, date and time, finance, and mathematics.

You will best benefit from this book if you read it thoroughly and practice the examples that might be of interest to you.

You must travel over a rough road to reach the stars.

## Points to remember

- **SEQUENCE** works seamlessly with the new **LAMBDA** function.
- It is easily applied in data validation formulas, where you need to verify a sequence of characters within a range.
- It is crucial when separating numbers from text or when splitting strings by predefined rules.
- Combining **SEQUENCE** with other Excel functions enables us to create more flexible solutions.

### Join our book's Discord space

Join the book's Discord Workspace for Latest updates, Offers, Tech happenings around the world, New Release and Sessions with the Authors:

#### https://discord.bpbonline.com



## Index

#### A

ARRAYTOTEXT function 11

#### С

CHOOSECOLS function 13 CHOOSEROWS function 14 classic monthly calendar about 137, 138 versus non-classic monthly calendar 137 COLUMNS function 90 conditional formatting 153

#### D

digits extracting, from string 34, 35 doctor's schedule versions 136, 137 DROP function 18 duplication factor method 1 31 method 2 32 used, for duplicating cell 31 Dynamic Array Functions (DAF) about 3 **ARRAYTOTEXT function 11 CHOOSECOLS** function 13 **CHOOSEROWS** function 14 DROP function 18 examples 3 **EXPAND** function 11 FILTER function 4 HSTACK function 10 RANDARRAY function 6 SEQUENCE function 7 SORTBY function 6

SORT function 5 TAKE function 17 **TEXTAFTER** function 12, 13 **TEXTBEFORE** function 12 **TEXTSPLIT** function 7 TOCOL function 8 **TOROW function 9 UNIOUE** function 4 VALUETOTEXT function 18 VSTACK function 9 VSTACK function, versus TOCOL function 10 WRAPCOLS function 15 WRAPROWS function 14 XLOOKUP function 15, 16 XMATCH function 17

#### Ε

**EXPAND** function 11

#### F

FILTER function 4 Flip vertical array 102

#### Η

horizontal flip columns about 100 methods 100, 101 HSTACK function 10

#### L

list of month's days bad attitude 142 creating 142 good attitude 142, 143

#### Μ

MonCal defining 134 MonCal Named Range 132 monthly calendar language about 139 formulas 140 list of languages and formats 140 list of month numbers 141 parameters 139

#### Ν

N consecutive dates methods 118, 119 nested IF function example 201-203 traditional nested IF function 200, 201 Net Present Value (NPV) 167, 168 non-classic monthly calendar about 139 versus classic monthly calendar 137 number of lower-case letters methods 44

#### R

RANDARRAY function 6 RATE function 170 reverse string methods 40, 41 RRI function 171, 172

#### S

SEQUENCE descending 68, 69 SEQUENCE function 7, 90 SEQUENCE in math operations array of duplicate numbers, generating by bit operations 191 bit operation, using 184 complex solution 194 digital root 192 divisor found 194, 195 divisor not found 195, 196 dynamic multiplication table 188 dynamic quadratic equation 182, 183 dynamic sine, with spin buttons 185-187 examples 178 exponential growth example 187 missing values, filling in geometric series 190 MMULT function 188 MMULT function, using 192 number of candles 184 OR method 185 POWER function 179, 180 SEQUENCE function 188 SEQUENCE function, using 192 sequence of alternate 1's and 0's, creating 182 sequence of fractions, generating 181 sequence of square roots, creating 180 simple solution 193 SUMPRODUCT function, with SEQUENCE 189 trigonometric function, with SEQUENCE 190 virtual array 183 SEQUENCE (ROW()) about 78

n integers, creating 78 sum of virtual array, creating 79 SEQUENCE with arrays active months 99 array of ascending numbers, creating 97, 98 array of identical numbers, creating 97 columns by parameters, selecting 110 data, converting 107, 108 dynamic array, building 100 examples 96 first of each month 115 flexible LARGE 104 Flip vertical array 102 Flip vertical array, with parameter 102 horizontal flip columns 100 last day of each month 116, 117 MMULT function, with dynamic arrays 104 MMULT function, with static ranges 104 multiple results, fetching for search value 111 one cell, to vertical array 98 two-dimensional array, creating with parameters 103 two-dimensional arrays, generating by two parameters 109 vertical array, converting into horizontal array without TRANSPOSE 112 vertical array, transposing without size 110 VLOOKUP tricks 105 SEQUENCE with date and time by month 145

by week 145, 146 class by month 125 classic monthly calendar, versus non-classic calendar 137 conditional formatting 144, 153 dates of Wednesdays, displaying 128 doctor's schedule 136 dynamic yearly calendar formula 144 eligibility days 135 examples 115 flexible method 157-159 horizontal SEQUENCE of descending dates 130 last date for each month 129, 130 list of month's days, creating 142 minutes to time, adding 121 monthly calendar language 139 month names, displaying without specific date 119, 120 N consecutive dates 118 NETWORKDAYS.INTL function for any period 133 NETWORKDAYS.INTL function for month 131, 132 NETWORKDAYS.INTL function without weekends 133, 134 NETWORKDAYS.INTL function with weekends 133, 134 new method 124 number of Monday 125, 126 number of Saturday 126, 127 number of Wednesdays, displaying 128 number of working days 134, 135 seconds to time, adding 121 SEQUENCE of dates 122

sequence of days 122 traditional methods 123, 124 weekday names, displaying 120 yearly calendar 143 yearly calendar, with conditional formatting 152 yearly horizontal calendar 146 yearly vertical calendar, with highlighted weekday 149 SEQUENCE with financial functions depreciation function in Excel 162 example 156 flexible method 160-162 loan installment, impacting 163-167 loan return by payments per period 156 Net Present Value (NPV) 167 PDURATION function 168-170 RATE function 170 RRI function 171-173 **SEQUENCE 173, 174** SUM 173, 174 sum of money, dividing equally 163 SEOUENCE with numbers array of 1's and 0's 80 chessboard, building 91, 92 Dynamic frequency based, on dynamic bins 89 Dynamic SEQUENCE 81 even numbers 75 examples 63 highest score subject 87, 88 horizontal ascending array, reversing 74 horizontal cell, duplicating 70

horizontal descending array, reversing 74 horizontal numbers. reversing by parameter 86 methods, extracting from string end 81, 82 methods, extracting from string start 82, 83 missing numbers, finding in list 73 N-digit number, creating 93 negative integer methods, generating 66-68 N largest numbers (Ascending), finding 84 N largest numbers (Descending), finding 84 number of columns 85 number of digits 85, 86 number, reversing 73 numbers, duplicating 71 odd numbers 75 order of SEQUENCE of numbers, reversing 87 positive integer methods, generating 63-65 SEQUENCE based, on number of unique values 88 SEQUENCE column 90 SEQUENCE(ROW()) 78 sum of digits 76 sum of digits and text 76 sum of largest N numbers 77 sum of Nth row 77 sum of smallest N numbers 78 SUM SEQUENCE 79, 80 vertical cell, duplicating 70

vertical SEQUENCE numbers, creating 71, 72 SEQUENCE with other animals cell, splitting by chunk size and separator 207, 208 check digit validity, verifying with Luhn algorithm 213, 214 digits, removing from string 208 examples 200 FILTER function, using 211, 212 first and last digits, fetching from string 203, 204 Hebrew letters, in data validation 204, 205 lowercase letters. removing from string 212, 213 names and split numbers, removing to separate cells 209 nested IF function 200 uppercase English letters, in data validation 206 uppercase English letters, removing from string 209-211 uppercase letters, removing from string 212, 213 SEOUENCE with text 10 highest-paid employees, finding 24 cell, duplicating by duplication factor 31 character, removing from string 43 country names, extracting 51 Diacritics, removing from Hebrew words 52 digits, extracting 43 digits, extracting from string 34, 35 digits, removing from string 39

English uppercase, in cell 30 English uppercase, in column 29 English uppercase letters, creating without number of letters 32 examples 24 first name, moving from end of cell 40 Gematria in English 56 Greek letters, generating in formula 45 Hebrew Gematria (Formula) 50 Hebrew Gematria (translation table 50 Hebrew letters, converting into English letters 53, 54 horizontal characters, extracting 28 increasing, from first character 49 last word, finding in cell 45, 46 letters, extracting from formula 55 letters, extracting from validation list 55 non-digits, extracting from string 58 Nth item description, fetching 54 number of characters. without separator 47 number of lower-case letters 44 number of non-empty cells, in column 47 number of words, in cell (version 1) 25 number of words, in cell (version 2) 25 number of words, in cell without SEQUENCE 42 number of words, in cell without TEXTSPLIT 42 numbers, splitting from text 36 palindrome 38 palindrome (Arabic) 53 parameter string, defining 52 range of words 57

reverse string 40 separator, adding 43 sequence of characters, duplicating 30 sorting, in alphabetical order 41 string, defining 37 string, in cell method 1 26 string, in cell method 2 26 string, in cell method 3 27 string, in cell method 4 27 string, in cell method 5 28 strip leading 48 text, increasing from last character 49 trailing digits 48 Unicode value, finding in string 58 unique Alphabetic characters, extracting from string 35 unwanted characters, removing from formula 37 unwanted characters, removing from named ranges as parameters 36 vendor, adding to formula 39 vendor, adding to table 38 vertical characters, extracting 29 vertical list, converting into horizontal list without TRANSPOSE function 33 weekday names, extracting 33 SORTBY function 6 SORT function 5

#### Т

TAKE function 17 TEXTAFTER function 12, 13 TEXTBEFORE function 12 TEXTSPLIT function 7 TOCOL function 8 versus VSTACK function 10 TOROW function 9

U UNIQUE function 4

#### V

VALUETOTEXT function 18 VLOOKUP tricks about 105 columns, fetching for searched item 105 data per lookup key, fetching in reverse order 105, 106 first and third data items per lookup key, fetching 107 last two columns, fetching for search key 106 VSTACK function about 9 versus TOCOL function 10

#### W

WRAPCOLS function 15 WRAPROWS function 14

X

XLOOKUP function 15, 16 XMATCH function 17

### Y

yearly horizontal calendar Conditional Formatting calendar 148 Conditional Formatting weekday names 148, 149 example 147 with highlighted weekday 146 yearly vertical calendar Conditional Formatting calendar 151 Conditional Formatting weekday names 151, 152 example 150 with highlighted weekday 149

# **Mastering SEQUENCE**

#### DESCRIPTION

The SEQUENCE function in Excel 365 allows you to generate sequences of numbers or values based on specific criteria. By utilizing this function, you can effectively manage a wide range of numerical and data manipulation tasks. If you're looking to leverage its dynamic capabilities to enhance your productivity, this book is an ideal resource for you.

This book provides the most comprehensive coverage of the SEQUENCE function, which is widely considered the most versatile function in Excel 365. It serves as a detailed introduction to the new Dynamic Array Functions, offering examples for a better understanding of this new revolutionary concept. Additionally, the book delves into the extensive applications of SEQUENCE in various areas, including text functions, number manipulation, arrays, date and time operations, financial calculations, math, and complex formulae involving SEQUENCE, with a special focus on the super-function: LAMBDA. With over 200 examples, this book allows you to actively engage and explore the multifaceted dynamism of the SEQUENCE function.

By the end of the book, you will be able to confidently apply the SEQUENCE function in your own Excel workflows, enhancing your productivity and efficiency.

#### **KEY FEATURES**

- Unleash the power of SEQUENCE to simplify complex array calculations and automate repetitive tasks.
- Discover techniques to efficiently perform calculations, text manipulation, financial and numerical analysis using SEQUENCE.
- Learn how to integrate SEQUENCE with other Excel functions and tools.

#### WHAT YOU WILL LEARN

- Explore advanced techniques to enhance text-based analysis using SEQUENCE.
- Understand how SEQUENCE can generate dynamic arrays with custom patterns, sizes, and dimensions.
- Learn how to use the LAMBDA function to solve complex calculations
- Gain insights into using SEQUENCE to streamline financial modeling and forecasting
- Get tips and tricks to optimize date and timerelated calculations using SEQUENCE.

#### WHO THIS BOOK IS FOR

This book is for everyone who is eager to explore innovative approaches in Excel, expand their knowledge, and improve their problem-solving skills. It serves as a valuable resource, offering a wide range of techniques that you can apply to enhance their Excel proficiency.





www.bpbonline.com

